

760

K35

pu

1872

UC-NRLF

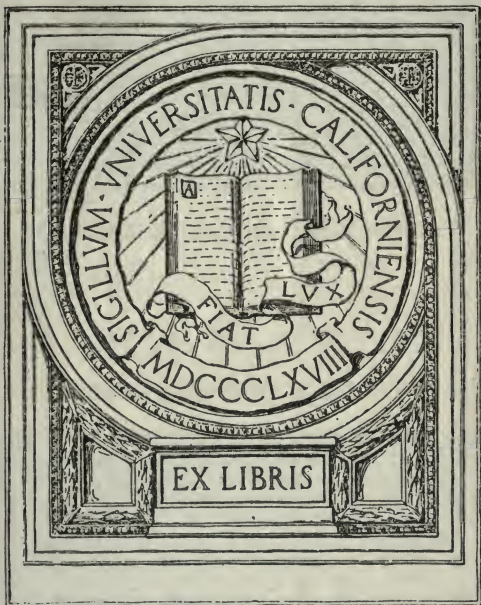


QB 257 365

PUBLIC SCHOOL

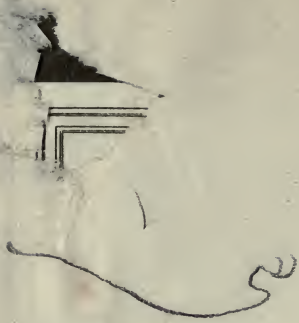
LAWN PRIMER

IN MEMORIAM  
J. Henry Senger



760  
K35  
pu  
1872

JOL



# THE PUBLIC SCHOOL

## LATIN PRIMER.

EDITED WITH THE SANCTION OF THE HEAD MASTERS  
OF THE PUBLIC SCHOOLS INCLUDED IN  
HER MAJESTY'S COMMISSION.

---

*Ordinis haec virtus erit et venus, aut ego fallor,  
Ut jam nunc dicat jam nunc debentia dici,  
Pleraque differat et praesens in tempus omittat.*

Hor. ad Pis. 42

---

LONDON:  
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.  
1872.

## THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN COURSE.

---

The CHILD'S LATIN ACCIDENCE, extracted from the Rev. Canon KENNEDY'S Child's Latin Primer, and containing all that is necessary to lead Boys up to the Public School Latin Primer. Price ONE SHILLING.

The Rev. Canon KENNEDY'S Child's Latin Primer, or First Latin Lessons, with Model Questions and Exercises. New Edition, adapted to the Principles of the Public School Latin Primer. Price 2s.

SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA, Steps to Latin, PART I. (the First Course) a First Companion Exercise-Book to the Public School Latin Primer. By the EDITOR of the Primer. Price 2s. 6d.

SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA, Steps to Latin, PART II. (the Second, Third, and Fourth Courses) a Second Companion Exercise-Book to the Public School Latin Primer. By the EDITOR of the Primer. Price 3s. 6d.

KEY to the EXERCISES in SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA, PARTS I. and II. price 5s. Supplied to INSTRUCTORS only, on application to the *Publishers*.

The PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR, for the use of Schools, Colleges, and Private Students. Edited, with the same sanction, by the Editor of the Public School Latin Primer. 12mo. price 6s.

---

London : LONGMANS and CO.

IN MEMORIAM

Prof. J. Henry Senger

## PREFACE.



THE present Re-issue of the PRIMER occurs nearly at the same time with the first issue of the PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR, in which its principles are more fully developed and explained.

It occurs also at a time when the Masters of English Schools, and Latin scholars generally, are alive to the duty of reforming the pronunciation of Latin in the process of instruction. On this question Grammars in general are neutral, partly from an unwillingness to dogmatize on doubtful points, partly because the work of teaching how to pronounce can never be accomplished so effectually by the school-books as by the vox viva of the Master in class lessons.

Nevertheless the time seems to have arrived for endeavouring to settle common theoretical principles with a view to future practice. For this reason a note respecting Latin Pronunciation is added on the last page of the present Re-issue of the Primer; and a section, with exemplification, is given to the same topic in the Appendix to the 'Public School Latin Grammar.'

LONDON: *January*, 1871.

926525

157

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation



THE  
PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.

---

---

**ETYMOLOGY.**

—◇—

THE LETTERS.

§ 1. The Latin ALPHABET now in use is the English without W. The Letters have two forms : (1) the Capital, or ancient ; and (2) the Small, or modern form.

(1) A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P

(2) a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p

Q R S T U V X Y Z.

q r s t u v x y z.

§ 2. The VOWELS, *sounding by themselves*, are a, e, i, o, u, y.  
I and u are called Semi-consonant Vowels.

§ 3. The CONSONANTS *sound with* Vowels : of these

The Mutes are b, c, d, g, k, p, q, and t :

The Nasals are m, n :

The Liquids are l, r :

The Spirants f, h, j, s, v :

The Double, x and z, express two letters each, cs, ds.

1. K remains in a few words before a : as, Kalendae.

2. Y and z only in words from the Greek : as, Dryas, zona.

3. Q blends with u or v : as, quis or quis.

§ 4. Latin has three usual DIPHTHONGS (double vowels),  
ae (æ), oe (œ), au : three seldom used, ei, eu, ui.

§ 5 Latin is spelt by SYLLABLES, as English.

§ 6. The Quantity of syllables is short (◌), long (◌-), or doubtful (◌◌), as the vowels are short, long, or doubtful : as, *fūgērīs*,

A Vowel may be—

(1) Short or long by nature : as, *āmas*.

(2) Short by nature, but long by position : as, *vīndēx*. § 162. 4.

(3) Short by nature, but doubtful by position : as, *quādrūplo*. § 162. a.

§ 7. Diphthongs are long.

§ 8. The modern Stops are used in Latin.

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 9. The PARTS OF SPEECH, or WORDS, are of three kinds :  
I. NOUNS ; II. VERB ; III. PARTICLES.

I. (1) The SUBSTANTIVE names a Thing :

As, **rex**, a king ; **Caesār**, Caesar.

(a) Names of Persons and Places are PROPER NAMES.  
All others are APPELLATIVA, or COMMON NOUNS.

(2) The ADJECTIVE attributes Quality :

As, *mārē vastum*, the vast sea.

**Vastum** is called an ATTRIBUTE or EPITHET of *mārē*.\*

(3) The PRONOUN stands for Substantive or Adjective.

As, **tū**, thou ; *mānūs haec*, this hand.

II. (4) The VERB states what a Thing is, does, or suffers :

As, *hōmīnēs cānunt*, men sing.†

NOUNS.

VERB.

\* A Substantive attributively joined to another Substantive is called its APPOSITE :  
as, *Croesus rex Lydorum*, Croesus, king of the Lydians, where *rex* is Apposite to  
*Croesus*, and agrees with it in Case.

† *Hōmīnēs* is called the SUBJECT.

*Cānunt* is called the PREDICATE.

When we say,

*Mors est prōpinquā*, death is nigh,

*Mors* is the Subject ;

*Est* is called the COPULA ;

*Prōpinquā* is called the COMPLEMENT ;

And Copula with Complement is the Predicate. § 87.

- III. (5) The ADVERB shews Where, When, or How :  
As, **Hūc** currē **nunc cělērītēr**, *run hither now quickly.*
- (6) The PREPOSITION governs the Case of a Noun ;  
and shews the relation of it to some other word :  
As, stō **ād** fōrēs, *I stand at the door.*
- (7) The CONJUNCTION links words and clauses :  
As, ōvēs **ēt** āvēs, *sheep and birds.*
- (8) The INTERJECTION is an exclamation :  
As, **eccē** ningīt, *lo, it snows.*

PARTICLES.

*Note.* There is no Article in Latin like *a, an, the*, in English. Thus *lux* may mean *a light, the light*, or simply *light*.

§ 10. Hence the Parts of Speech may be called eight :

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. Substantive, | 5. Adverb,       |
| 2. Adjective,   | 6. Preposition,  |
| 3. Pronoun,     | 7. Conjunction,  |
| 4. Verb,        | 8. Interjection, |

Which have Flexion.

Which are without Flexion.\*

§ 11. (1) The changes made in a word, in order to vary its meaning, are called its FLEXION.

- (2) Nouns are DECLINED.  
Verbs are CONJUGATED.

- (3) A Noun has three ACCIDENTS : NUMBER, CASE, GENDER ;  
A Verb five : VOICE, MOOD, TENSE, NUMBER, PERSON.

[*a.* The STEM is that part of a word on which the changes of Flexion are based.

*b.* A Flexional addition at the end of the Stem is called an ENDING or SUFFIX.

*c.* The last letter of the Stem is called the CHARACTER, and in this book is often indicated by a Capital.

*d.* The Stem of a Noun is usually discerned by casting off *-rum* or *-um* from the Genitive Plural : † as, *mensa-*, *dōmīno-*, *lēon-*, *māri-*, *grādu-*, *dīe-*.

*e.* The Stem of a Verb is shewn in the Imperative Mood : as, *āma-*, *audi-*, *mōne-*. But in the Third Conjugation *-ē* must be cast off : as, *rēg-ē* ; and in a Deponent Verb *-rē* or *-ērē* : as, *fa-rē*, *re-rē*, *lāb-ērē*.

*f.* The Root is that part which a word has in common with kindred words. Thus in *āgītārē*, *āgīta-* is the Stem, but *ag-* the Root, as shown by comparing *āg-ērē*, *ag-men*. And *g* is the Root-character.]

\* Except the Comparison of Adverbs, § 37.

† Casting off *-rum* in the First, Second, and Fifth Declensions ; *-um* in the Third and Fourth.

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 12. The Substantive is declined by Number and Case: the Adjective by Number, Case, and Gender, agreeing in these with its Substantive. See § 9 (2).

§ 13. The Numbers are two: 1. SINGULAR, speaking of one, as *mensă*, a table; 2. PLURAL, of more than one, as *mensae*, tables.

§ 14. The Cases are six.

*Answers the question*

1. NOMINATIVE . . .	Who or what?	Quis dedit? . . .	} Vīr, A man.
		Who gave? . . .	
2. VOCATIVE (Case of one addressed) . . .			} Vīr, O man.
3. ACCUSATIVE . . .	Whom or what?	Quem videt? . . .	} Vīrum, A man.
		Whom see I? . . .	
4. GENITIVE . . .	Whose or whereof?	Cujus donum? . . .	} Vīri, A man's.
		Whose gift? . . .	
5. DATIVE . . .	To or for whom or what?	Cui datum? . . .	} Vīrō, To a man.
		To whom given? . . .	
6. ABLATIVE * . . .	By, with, &c., whom or what?	Ā quō datum? . . .	} Ā vīrō, By a man.
		By whom given? . . .	

§ 15. The Genders are three: 1. MASCULINE; 2. FEMININE; 3. NEUTER. A Substantive which may be either Masculine or Feminine is said to be COMMON to both Genders.

## SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 16. There are five Declensions of Latin Substantives, known by the endings of their Genitives:—

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Gen. Sing.	ae	ī	is	ūs	ēi
Gen. Plur.	Ārum	Ōrum	um† or Īum	Ūum	Ērum

§ 17. (1) In Neuter Nouns, the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative are the same in each Number severally; and in the Plural they end in *ā*.

(2) The Vocative of Latin words is the same as the Nominative, except in Singular Nouns of the Second Declension like *dōmīnūs*, *filiūs*.

(3) The Dative and Ablative Plural are always the same.

\* Many English Particles may be signs of the Latin Ablative: as, *by, with, from, in, upon, of, for, at, than*.

† The Consonant before *um* is the Character. See § 11 c; § 21 (a).

## THE FIRST DECLENSION (A-nouns).

§ 18. The First Declension contains Latin Nouns, mostly Feminine, with Nominative in **ă**; and a few Greek words, chiefly Proper Names, in **ās**, **ēs**, Masculine, and **ē** Feminine.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<b>Mensă</b> , a table	<b>Mensae</b> , tables, f.
Voc.	<b>Mensă</b> , O table	<b>Mensae</b> , O tables
Acc.	<b>Mensam</b> , a table	<b>Mensās</b> , tables
Gen.	<b>Mensae</b> , of a table	<b>Mensārum</b> , of tables
Dat.	<b>Mensae</b> , to or for a table	<b>Mensīs</b> , to or for tables
Abl.	<b>Mensă</b> , by, with, or from a table	<b>Mensīs</b> , by, with, or from tables

Decline also :

Singular.

	Goddess, f.	Son of Theseus, m.	Aeneas, m.	Cybele, f.
Nom.	Dě- <b>ă</b>	Thēsīd- <b>ēs</b>	Aenē- <b>ās</b>	Cýběl- <b>ē</b>
Voc.	Dě- <b>ă</b>	Thēsīd- <b>ē</b> ( <b>ă</b> , <b>ă</b> )	Aenē- <b>ă</b>	Cýběl- <b>ē</b>
Acc.	Dě- <b>am</b>	Thēsīd- <b>ēn</b> ( <b>am</b> )	Aenē- <b>ān</b> ( <b>am</b> )	Cýběl- <b>ēn</b>
Gen.	Dě- <b>ae</b>	Thēsīd- <b>ae</b>	Aenē- <b>ae</b>	Cýběl- <b>ēs</b> ( <b>ae</b> )
Dat.	Dě- <b>ae</b>	Thēsīd- <b>ae</b>	Aenē- <b>ae</b>	Cýběl- <b>ae</b>
Abl.	Dě- <b>ă</b>	Thēsīd- <b>ē</b> ( <b>ă</b> )	Aenē- <b>ă</b>	Cýběl- <b>ē</b> ( <b>ă</b> )

Plural.

N. V.	Dě- <b>ae</b>	Thēsīd- <b>ae</b>	(as Mensă,	(as Mensă,
Acc.	Dě- <b>ās</b>	Thēsīd- <b>ās</b>	but rare.)	but rare.)
Gen.	Dě- <b>Ārum</b>	Thēsīd- <b>um</b>		
D. Abl.	Dě- <b>ăbūs</b> .	Thēsīd- <b>īs</b> .		

Note.—Masculine Substantives in **ă** are declined like **mensă** : as **pōētă**, a poet.

## THE SECOND DECLENSION (O-nouns).

§ 19. The Second Declension contains Nouns with Nominative in **ūs**, **ēr**, generally Masculine, and in **um**, Neuter.

(a) MASCULINE.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<b>Dōmīnūs</b> , a lord	<b>Dōmīnī</b> , lords, m.
Voc.	<b>Dōmīnē</b> , O lord	<b>Dōmīnī</b> , O lords
Acc.	<b>Dōmīnum</b> , a lord	<b>Dōmīnōs</b> , lords
Gen.	<b>Dōmīnī</b> , of a lord	<b>Dōmīnōrum</b> , of lords
Dat.	<b>Dōmīnō</b> , to or for a lord	<b>Dōmīnīs</b> , to, or for lords
Abl.	<b>Dōmīnō</b> , by, with, or from a lord	<b>Dōmīnīs</b> , by, with, or from lords.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<b>Pŭēr</b> , <i>a boy</i>	<b>Pŭērī</b> , <i>boys, m.</i>
Voc.	<b>Pŭēr</b> , <i>O boy</i>	<b>Pŭērī</b> , <i>O boys</i>
Acc.	<b>Pŭērūm</b> , <i>a boy</i>	<b>Pŭērōs</b> , <i>boys</i>
Gen.	<b>Pŭērī</b> , <i>of a boy</i>	<b>Pŭērōrum</b> , <i>of boys</i>
Dat.	<b>Pŭērō</b> , <i>to or for a boy</i>	<b>Pŭērīs</b> , <i>to or for boys</i>
Abl.	<b>Pŭērō</b> , <i>by, with, or from a boy</i>	<b>Pŭērīs</b> , <i>by, with, or from boys.</i>

Nom.	<b>Măgistĕr</b> , <i>the master</i>	<b>Măgistrī</b> , <i>masters, m.</i>
Voc.	<b>Măgistĕr</b> , <i>O master</i>	<b>Măgistrī</b> , <i>O masters</i>
Acc.	<b>Măgistrūm</b> , <i>the master</i>	<b>Măgistrōs</b> , <i>masters</i>
Gen.	<b>Măgistrī</b> , <i>of the master</i>	<b>Măgistrōrum</b> , <i>of masters</i>
Dat.	<b>Măgistrō</b> , <i>to or for the master</i>	<b>Măgistrīs</b> , <i>to or for masters</i>
Abl.	<b>Măgistrō</b> , <i>by, with, or from the master</i>	<b>Măgistrīs</b> , <i>by, with, or from masters.</i>

## (b) NEUTER.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<b>Bellūm</b> , <i>war</i>	<b>Bellă</b> , <i>wars</i>
Voc.	<b>Bellūm</b> , <i>O war</i>	<b>Bellă</b> , <i>O wars</i>
Acc.	<b>Bellūm</b> , <i>war</i>	<b>Bellă</b> , <i>wars</i>
Gen.	<b>Bellī</b> , <i>of war</i>	<b>Bellōrum</b> , <i>of wars</i>
Dat.	<b>Bellō</b> , <i>to or for war</i>	<b>Bellīs</b> , <i>to or for wars</i>
Abl.	<b>Bellō</b> , <i>by, with, or from war</i>	<b>Bellīs</b> , <i>by, with, or from wars.</i>

Decline also :

Singular.

	<i>Son, m.</i>	<i>Coin, m.</i>	<i>God, m.</i>	<i>Cloak, n.</i>
Nom.	Filī- <b>ūs</b>	Numm- <b>ūs</b>	Dĕ- <b>ūs</b>	Pallī- <b>um</b>
Voc.	Fil- <b>ī</b>	Numm- <b>ĕ</b>	Dĕ- <b>ūs</b>	Pallī- <b>um</b>
Acc.	Filī- <b>um</b>	Numm- <b>um</b>	Dĕ- <b>um</b>	Pallī- <b>um</b>
Gen.	Filī- <b>ī</b> or Filī	Numm- <b>ī</b>	Dĕ- <b>ī</b>	Pallī- <b>ī</b> or Pallī
D. Abl.	Filī- <b>ō</b>	Numm- <b>ō</b>	Dĕ- <b>ō</b>	Pallī- <b>ō</b>

Plural.

N.V.	Filī- <b>ī</b>	Numm- <b>ī</b>	Dī (also Dī <sup>?</sup> )	Pallī- <b>ă</b>
Acc.	Filī- <b>ōs</b>	Numm- <b>ōs</b>	Dĕ- <b>ōs</b>	Pallī- <b>ă</b>
Gen.	Filī- <b>ōrum</b>	{ Numm- <b>ōrum</b> or Numm- <b>um</b>	{ Dĕ- <b>ōrum</b> or Dĕ- <b>um</b>	Pallī- <b>ōrum</b>
D. Abl.	Filī- <b>īs</b> .	Numm- <b>īs</b>	Dīs (also Dīs).	Pallī- <b>īs</b>

## THE THIRD DECLENSION (Consonant and I-nouns).

§ 20. The Third Declension has two Divisions :

I. Nouns which have for Character a Consonant.

II. Nouns which have for Character the Half-consonant I.

[Of these Divisions the First is Imparisyllable, having more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative Singular.

The Second is Parisyllable, having the same number of syllables in the Genitive as in the Nominative.

But a few Parisyllable Nouns belong to the Consonant Division ; and many Imparisyllable Nouns to the I-Division.

The Endings of the Nominative Singular are numerous.]

## § 21.

## I. CONSONANT-NOUNS.

## (a) MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	<b>Jūdex</b> , a judge, or O judge	<b>Jūdīcēs</b> , judges, or O judges, c.
Acc.	<b>Jūdīcem</b> , a judge	<b>Jūdīcēs</b> , judges
Gen.	<b>Jūdīcis</b> , of a judge	<b>JūdīCum</b> , of judges
Dat.	<b>Jūdīcī</b> , to or for a judge	<b>Jūdīcībūs</b> , to or for judges
Abl.	<b>Jūdīcē</b> , by, with, or from a judge	<b>Jūdīcībūs</b> , by, with, or from judges.
N. V.	<b>Aetās</b> , an age, or O age	<b>Aetātēs</b> , ages, or O ages, f.
Acc.	<b>Aetātem</b> , an age	<b>Aetātēs</b> , ages
Gen.	<b>Aetātīs</b> , of an age	<b>AetāTum</b> , of ages
Dat.	<b>Aetātī</b> , to or for an age	<b>Aetātībūs</b> , to or for ages
Abl.	<b>Aetātē</b> , by, with, or from an age	<b>Aetātībūs</b> , by, with, or from ages.
N. V.	<b>Lēō</b> , a lion, or O lion	<b>Lēōnēs</b> , lions, or O lions, m.
Acc.	<b>Lēōnem</b> , a lion	<b>Lēōnēs</b> , lions
Gen.	<b>Lēōnīs</b> , of a lion	<b>LēōNum</b> , of lions
Dat.	<b>Lēōnī</b> , to or for a lion	<b>Lēōnībūs</b> , to or for lions
Abl.	<b>Lēōnē</b> , by, with, or from a lion	<b>Lēōnībūs</b> , by, with, or from lions.
N. V.	<b>Virgō</b> , a virgin, or O virgin	<b>Virgīnēs</b> , virgins, or O virgins, f.
Acc.	<b>Virgīnem</b> , a virgin	<b>Virgīnēs</b> , virgins
Gen.	<b>Virgīnīs</b> , of a virgin	<b>VirgīNum</b> , of virgins
Dat.	<b>Virgīnī</b> , to or for a virgin	<b>Virgīnībūs</b> , to or for virgins
Abl.	<b>Virgīnē</b> , by, with, or from a virgin	<b>Virgīnībūs</b> , by, with, or from virgins.

Decline also :

		Singular.					
	<i>Law, f.</i>	<i>Foot, m.</i>	<i>Love, m.</i>	<i>Cinder, c.</i>	<i>Father, m.</i>		
N. V.	Lex	Pēs	Āmōr	Cīnīs	Pātr	—	
Acc.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	<b>em</b>	
Gen.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	<b>īs</b>	
Dat.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	<b>ī</b>	
Abl.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	<b>ě</b>	
Plural.							
N. V. A.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	<b>ēs</b>	
Gen.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	<b>um</b>	
D. Abl.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	<b>ībūs</b>	

(b) NEUTER.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	<b>Nōmēn</b> , <i>name, or O name</i>	<b>Nōmīnā</b> , <i>names, or O names</i>
Acc.	<b>Nōmēn</b> , <i>name</i>	<b>Nōmīnā</b> , <i>names</i>
Gen.	<b>Nōmīnīs</b> , <i>of a name</i>	<b>NōmīNum</b> , <i>of names</i>
Dat.	<b>Nōmīnī</b> , <i>to or for a name</i>	<b>Nōmīnībūs</b> , <i>to or for names</i>
Abl.	<b>Nōmīnē</b> , <i>by, with, or from a name</i>	<b>Nōmīnībūs</b> , <i>by, with, or from names.</i>
N. V.	<b>Ōpūs</b> , <i>a work, or O work</i>	<b>Ōpērā</b> , <i>works, or O works</i>
Acc.	<b>Ōpūs</b> , <i>a work</i>	<b>Ōpērā</b> , <i>works</i>
Gen.	<b>Ōpērīs</b> , <i>of a work</i>	<b>ŌpērUm</b> , <i>of works</i>
Dat.	<b>Ōpērī</b> , <i>to or for a work</i>	<b>Ōpērībūs</b> , <i>to or for works</i>
Abl.	<b>Ōpērē</b> , <i>by, with, or from a work</i>	<b>Ōpērībūs</b> , <i>by, with, or from works.</i>

Decline also the Neuter Nouns :

		Singular.					
	<i>Head.</i>	<i>Lightning.</i>	<i>Leg.</i>	<i>Hard wood.</i>	<i>Body.</i>		
N. V. A.	Cāpūt	Fulgūr	Crūs	Rōbūr	Corpūs	—	
Gen.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	<b>īs</b>	
Dat.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	<b>ī</b>	
Abl.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	<b>ě</b>	
Plural.							
N. V. A.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	<b>ā</b>	
Gen.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	<b>um</b>	
D. Abl.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	<b>ībūs</b>	



## § 22.

## II. I-NOUNS.

## (a) MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	<b>Ōvīs</b> , a sheep, or <i>O sheep</i>	<b>Ōvēs</b> , sheep, or <i>O sheep</i> , f.
Acc.	<b>Ōvem</b> , a sheep	<b>Ōvēs</b> , or <b>Ōvīs</b> ,* sheep
Gen.	<b>Ōvīs</b> , of a sheep	<b>Ōvīum</b> , of sheep
Dat.	<b>Ōvī</b> , to or for a sheep	<b>Ōvībūs</b> , to or for sheep
Abl.	<b>Ōvē</b> , by, with, or from a sheep	<b>Ōvībūs</b> , by, with, or from sheep.
N. V.	<b>Nūbēs</b> , a cloud, or <i>O cloud</i>	<b>Nūbēs</b> , clouds, or <i>O clouds</i> , f.
Acc.	<b>Nūbem</b> , a cloud	<b>Nūbēs</b> , or <b>Nūbīs</b> ,* clouds
Gen.	<b>Nūbīs</b> , of a cloud	<b>Nūbīum</b> , of clouds
Dat.	<b>Nūbī</b> , to or for a cloud	<b>Nūbībūs</b> , to or for clouds
Abl.	<b>Nūbě</b> , by, with, or from a cloud	<b>Nūbībūs</b> , by, with, or from clouds.
N. V.	<b>Dens</b> , a tooth, or <i>O tooth</i>	<b>Dentēs</b> , teeth, or <i>O teeth</i> , m.
Acc.	<b>Dentem</b> , a tooth	<b>Dentēs</b> , or <b>Dentīs</b> ,* teeth
Gen.	<b>Dentīs</b> , of a tooth	<b>Dentīum</b> ,† of teeth
Dat.	<b>Dentī</b> , to or for a tooth	<b>Dentībūs</b> , to or for teeth
Abl.	<b>Dentě</b> , by, with, or from a tooth	<b>Dentībūs</b> , by, with, or from teeth.

Decline also :

## Singular.

	<i>Cough</i> , f.	<i>Key</i> , f.	<i>Canal</i> , m.	<i>Shower</i> , m.
N. V.	Tuss- <b>īs</b>	Clāv- <b>īs</b>	Cānāl- <b>īs</b>	Imbēr
Acc.	Tuss- <b>im</b>	Clāv- <b>em</b> or <b>im</b>	Cānāl- <b>em</b>	Imbr- <b>em</b>
Gen.	Tuss- <b>īs</b>	Clāv- <b>īs</b>	Cānāl- <b>īs</b>	Imbr- <b>īs</b>
Dat.	Tuss- <b>ī</b>	Clāv- <b>ī</b>	Cānāl- <b>ī</b>	Imbr- <b>ī</b>
Abl.	Tuss- <b>ī</b>	Clāv- <b>ě</b> or <b>ī</b>	Cānāl- <b>ī</b>	Imbr- <b>ě</b> or <b>ī</b>

## Plural.

N. V. A.	Tuss- <b>ēs</b>	Clāv- <b>ēs</b>	Cānāl- <b>ēs</b>	Imbr- <b>ēs</b> *
Gen.	Tuss- <b>īum</b>	Clāv- <b>īum</b>	Cānāl- <b>īum</b>	Imbr- <b>īum</b>
D. Abl.	Tuss- <b>ībūs</b> .	Clāv- <b>ībūs</b> .	Cānāl- <b>ībūs</b> .	Imbr- <b>ībūs</b> .

\* The Accus. Plur. of I-nouns, Masc. and Fem., is also spelt with ending *īs*, and so appears in most ancient manuscripts, and in many editions of Latin authors.† I-nouns in -ans -ens, often drop *i* in Gen. Plur. ; as *pārentum* for *pārentīum*.

## (b) NEUTER.

## Singular.

	<i>Bone.</i>	<i>Sea.</i>	<i>Spur.</i>	<i>Animal.</i>
N. V. A.	<b>Ōs</b>	<b>Mǎřě</b>	<b>Calcār</b>	<b>Ānimāl</b>
Gen.	<b>Ossīs</b>	<b>Mǎřīs</b>	<b>Calcārīs</b>	<b>Ānimālīs</b>
Dat.	<b>Ossī</b>	<b>Mǎřī</b>	<b>Calcārī</b>	<b>Ānimālī</b>
Abl.	<b>Ossě</b>	<b>Mǎřī</b>	<b>Calcārī</b>	<b>Ānimālī</b>

## Plural.

N. V. A.	<b>Ossǎ</b>	<b>Mǎřǎ</b>	<b>Calcārǎ</b>	<b>Ānimālǎ</b>
Gen.	<b>Ossīum</b>	<b>Mǎřīum</b>	<b>Calcārīum</b>	<b>Ānimālīum</b>
D. Abl.	<b>Ossībūs.</b>	<b>Mǎřībūs.</b>	<b>Calcārībūs.</b>	<b>Ānimālībūs.</b>

## THE FOURTH DECLENSION (U-nouns).

§ 23. Masculine and Feminine Substantives in the Fourth Declension form the Nominative in **ūs**; Neuter Nouns in **ū**.

## Singular.

## Plural.

N. V.	<b>Grādūs</b> , <i>a step</i> , or <i>O step</i>	<b>Grādūs</b> , <i>steps</i> , or <i>O steps</i> , m.
Acc.	<b>Grādum</b> , <i>a step</i>	<b>Grādūs</b> , <i>steps</i>
Gen.	<b>Grādūs</b> , <i>of a step</i>	<b>Grādūum</b> , <i>of steps</i>
Dat.	<b>Grādūī</b> , <i>to</i> or <i>for a step</i>	<b>Grādībūs</b> (ūbūs), <i>to</i> or <i>for steps</i>
Abl.	<b>Grādū</b> , <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from a step</i>	<b>Grādībūs</b> (ūbūs), <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from steps</i> .
N. V. A.	<b>Gēnū</b> , <i>a knee</i> , or <i>O knee</i>	<b>Gēnūǎ</b> , <i>knees</i> , or <i>O knees</i> , n.
Gen.	<b>Gēnūs</b> , <i>of a knee</i>	<b>Gēnūum</b> , <i>of knees</i>
Dat.	<b>Gēnū</b> , <i>to</i> or <i>for a knee</i>	<b>Gēnībūs</b> (ūbūs), <i>to</i> or <i>for knees</i>
Abl.	<b>Gēnū</b> , <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from a knee</i>	<b>Gēnībūs</b> (ūbūs), <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from knees</i> .

## THE FIFTH DECLENSION (E-nouns).

§ 24. The Fifth Declension contains Feminine Nouns with Nominative in **ēs**. (Concerning **dēs**, see § 31.)

## Singular.

## Plural.

N. V.	<b>Dīēs</b> , <i>a day</i> , or <i>O day</i>	<b>Dīēs</b> , <i>days</i> , or <i>O days</i> , c.
Acc.	<b>Dīem</b> , <i>a day</i>	<b>Dīēs</b> , <i>days</i>
Gen.	<b>Dīēī</b> , <i>of a day</i>	<b>Dīērum</b> , <i>of days</i>
Dat.	<b>Dīēī</b> , <i>to</i> or <i>for a day</i>	<b>Dīēbūs</b> , <i>to</i> or <i>for days</i>
Abl.	<b>Dīē</b> , <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from a day</i>	<b>Dīēbūs</b> , <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from days</i> .

## § 25. ANOMALIES OF THE NOUN.

- (1) Many Nouns are used in the Singular only: as,  
Argentum, aurum, ferrum, plebs, justitiā,  
Vēr, aevum, lētum, sanguis, pūeritiā.

*Note.*—Add āēr, *air* (Acc. S. āērā or āěrem), aether, *sky*  
(Acc. S. aethērā or aethěrem), with many more.

- (2) Many are used in the Plural only:

As, Mānēs, libērī, Pēnātēs,  
Dīvitiāe, cūnae, nūgae, grātēs,  
With armā, mūniā, māgālīā,  
And festive seasons, as Flōrālīā.

- (3) Some Nouns change their meaning in the Plural:

As, castrum, *a fort*;  
castrū, *a camp*.

- (4) Many Nouns are Defective in Case:

As, dāpis, ōpis, vīs.

- (5) Some Nouns take forms from *two* Declensions:

As, laurūs, *bay-tree* (Gen. ī and ūs).

*Note.*—These are called Hětěrōčlītā.

- (6) Some vary the Gender:

As, jōcūs, *jest*, Pl. jōcī and jōcā;  
Lōcūs, *place*, Pl. lōcī and lōcā;  
Frēnum, *bit*, Pl. frēnī and frēnā;  
Rastrum, *harrow*, Pl. rastrī and rastrā.

*Note.*—These are called Hětěrōgěněā.

## a. Decline the Defective Nouns:

## Singular.

	<i>Feast, f.</i>	<i>Fruit, f.</i>	<i>Help, f.</i>	<i>Prayer, f.</i>	<i>Change, f.</i>	
N. V.	—	—	—	—	—	—
Acc.	Dāp-	Frūg-	Ŏp-	Prēc-	Vīc-	<b>em</b>
Gen.	Dāp-	Frūg-	Ŏp-	—	Vīc-	<b>is</b>
Dat.	Dāp-	Frūg-	—	Prēc-	—	<b>ī</b>
Abl.	Dāp-	Frūg-	Ŏp-	Prēc-	Vīc-	<b>ě</b>

Full Plural, with endings **ēs**, **um**, **ībūs**, as § 21: except vīc-**īum**.

S. N. Vīs, *strength, f.* Acc. vim. Abl. vī. Pl. vīrēs, vīrūm, vīrībūs.

b. The Heteroclite Noun Dōmūs, *house, f.*, is like Grādūs; but forms  
Sing. Dat. -ūī or -ō. Abl. ō. Plur. Acc. -ūs or -ōs. Gen. ūm or ōrum.  
Dōmī, *at home*,

## GENDER OF NOUNS.

## § 26.

## GENERAL RULES.

- (1) The Gender of a Latin Noun is shown by Meaning or by Form.
- (2) Males, Months, Winds, and People, are always Masculine, and most Names of Mountains and Rivers.
- (3) Females and Islands are Feminine, and most Names of Countries, Cities, and Trees.
- (4) Nouns indeclinable are Neuter: as, *fās*, *něfās*, and the Verb-noun Infinitive;  
*Est summum nēfās fallěřě,*  
*Deceit is gross impiety.*
- (5) Common are to either sex:  
*Artifex* and *ōpifex*,  
*Convivā*, *vātēs*, *advěňā*,  
*Testis*, *civis*, *incōlā*,  
*Pārens*, *sācerdōs*, *custōs*, *vindex*,  
*Adōlescens*, *infans*, *index*,  
*Jūdex*, *hērēs*, *cōmēs*, *dux*,  
*Princeps*, *mūniceps*, *conjux*,  
*Obsēs*, *ālēs*, *interprēs*,  
*Auctōr*, *exūl*; and with these  
*Bōs*, *dāmā*, *talpā*, *tīgrīs*, *grūs*,  
*Cānis* and *anguis*, *serpens*, *sūs*.\*

## § 27.

## GENDER IN THE FIRST DECLENSION.

*Princ. Rule.*—Substantives of the First Declension in *ā*, *ē*, are Feminine. Substantives in *ās*, *ēs*, are Masculine.

*Exc.* Nouns denoting males in *ā*  
 Are by meaning Masculā;  
 And added to the Males must be  
*Hādriā*, *the Hadriatic Sea*.

\* Many of these words (with others, as *hostis*, *hospēs*, *milēs*, *praesēs*, *augūr*, *aurigā*) are rarely found Feminine. A few are rarely Masculine: as, *dāmā*, *talpā*, *tīgrīs*, *grūs*, *sūs*. Some are equally used in each Gender, when Singular: as, *pārens*, *conjux*, *sācerdōs*, *vātēs*, *cōmēs*, *dux*, *cānis*: in Plural generally Masculine.

## § 28. GENDER IN THE SECOND DECLENSION.

*Princ. Rule.*—Substantives of the Second Declension in *ūs, ěr*, are Masculine. Substantives in *um* are Neuter.

*Exc.* Fēmīnīnā stand in *ūs*,  
 Alvūs, arctūs, carbāsūs,  
 Cōlūs, hūmūs, pampīnūs,  
 Vannūs; names of Plants, as pīrūs;  
 Names of Jewels, as sapphīrūs.  
 Neuter, pēlāgūs and vīrūs.  
 Vulgūs Neuter commonly,  
 Rarely Masculine, we see.

## § 29. GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.

*Princ. Rule. I.*—Substantives of the Third Declension are Masculine which end in *o, or, os, er*; also Imparisyllables in *es*.

- Exc.* (1) Substantives in *dō* and *gō*  
 Gēnūs Fēmīnīnum show.  
 But ligō, ordō, praedō, cardō,  
 Are Mascūlā; and Common margō.
- (2) Verbal Nouns in *io* call  
 Fēmīnīnā, one and all:  
 Mascūlā will only be  
 Things that you may touch or see,  
 (As curcūliō, vespertīliō,  
 Pūgīō, scīpīō, and pāpīliō.)  
 With the Nouns that number show,  
 Such as terniō, sēniō.
- (3) Ēchō Fēmīnīnum name:  
 Cārō (carnīs) is the same.
- (4) Fēmīnīnum call arbōr;  
 Neuter aequōr, marmōr, cōr.
- (5) Of the Substantives in *os*,  
 Fēmīnīna cōs and dōs:  
 While, of Latin Nouns, alone  
 Neuter are ōs (ossīs), bone,  
 And ōs (ōrīs), mouth: a few  
 Greek in *ōs* are Neuter too.\*
- (6) Many Neuters end in *er*,  
 Silēr, ācēr, verbēr, vēr,  
 Tūbēr, ūbēr, and cādāvēr,  
 Pīpēr, ītēr, and pāpāvēr.

\* As mēlōs, melody; ěpōs, epic poem.

- (7) Fēmīnīnā, compēs, tēgēs,  
Mercēs, mergēs, quīēs, sēgēs,  
Though their Genitives increase.—  
With the Neuters reckon aes.

*Princ. Rule. II.*—Substantives of the Third Declension are Feminine which end in *is, as, aus, x*; or in *s* following another Consonant; also Parisyllables in *es*.

- Exc.* (1) Many Nouns in *is* we find  
To the Mascūlā assigned:  
Amnīs, axīs, caulīs, collīs,  
Clūnīs, crīnīs, fascīs, follīs,  
Fustīs, ignīs, orbīs, ensīs,  
Pānīs, piscīs, postīs, mensīs,  
Torrīs, unguīs, and cānālīs,  
Vectīs, vermīs, and nātālīs,  
Lāpīs, sanguīs, cūcūmīs,  
Pulvīs, cassēs, Mānēs, glīs.
- (2) Chiefly Mascūlā we view,  
Sometimes Fēmīnīnā too,  
Callīs, sentīs, fūnīs, fīnīs,  
Torquīs, and, in poets, cūnīs.
- (3) Mascūlā are ādāmās,  
Elēphās, mās, gīgās, ās:  
Vās (vādīs) too as Male is known,  
Vās (vāsīs) as a Neuter Noun.
- (4) Most are Mascūlā in *ex*:  
Fēmīnīnā, forfex, lex,  
Nex, sūpellex: Common, pūmex,  
Imbrex, ōbex, sīlex, rūmex.
- (5) Mascūlā appear in *ix*,  
Fornix, phoenix, and cālix.
- (6) Mascūlā are fons and mons,  
Chālybs, hŷdrops, gryps, and pons,  
Rūdens, torrens, dens, and cliēns,  
Fractions of the ās, as triēns;  
Add to Mascūlā trīdens,  
Occīdens and ōriēns,  
Bīdens (*hoe*): but bīdens (*sheep*)  
With the Fēmīnīnā keep.
- (7) Mascūlā are found in *ēs*  
Verrēs and ācīnācēs,

*Princ. Rule. III.*—Substantives of the Third Declension are Neuter which end in *ar, ur, us, ā, ē, e, l, n, t.*

- Exc.* (1) Mascülă are found in *ur*,  
Furfür, turtür, vultür, fūr.
- (2) Fēmīnīnă, some in *ūs*  
Keep *ū* long, as, servītūs,  
With jūventūs, virtūs, sālūs,  
Sēnectūs, tellūs, incūs, pālūs.
- (3) Also pęcūs (pęcūdīs)  
Of the Female Gender is.
- (4) Mascülă are found in *us*  
Lěpūs (lěpōrīs) and mūs.
- (5) Mascülă in *l* are mūgīl,  
Consul, sāl and sōl, with pūgīl.
- (6) Mascülă are rēn and splēn,  
Pectēn, delphīn, attāgēn.
- (7) Fēmīnīnă some in *ōn*;  
Gorgōn, sindōn, haleŷōn.

§ 30. GENDER IN THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

*Princ. Rule.*—Substantives of the Fourth Declension in *ūs* are Masculine, in *ū* Neuter.

- Exc.* Fēmīnīnă, trees in *ūs*,  
With trībūs, ācūs, porticūs,  
Dōmūs, nūrūs, sōcrūs, ānūs,  
Īdūs (īdūum) and mănūs.\*

§ 31. GENDER IN THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

*Princ. Rule.*—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are Feminine.

*Exc.* Dīēs in the Singular is Common, in the Plural Masculine.

---

\* See English of Nouns at p. 94,

## ADJECTIVES.

§ 32. A. Adjectives of THREE ENDINGS, in *ūs, ā, um, cr* *ēr, ā, um*, follow the Second and First Declensions.

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	
like		like mensā	like bellum	
Dōmīnūs .	Bōnūs	bōnā	bōnum	<i>good</i>
Pūēr . . .	Tēnēr	tēnērā .	tēnērūm	<i>tender</i>
Māgīstēr .	Nīgēr	nīgrā	nīgrūm	<i>black</i>

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	<b>Bōnūs</b>	<b>bōnā</b>	<b>bōnum</b>	<b>Bōnī</b>	<b>bōnae</b>	<b>bōnā</b>
Voc.	<b>Bōnē</b>	<b>bōnā</b>	<b>bōnum</b>	<b>Bōnī</b>	<b>bōnae</b>	<b>bōnā</b>
Acc.	<b>Bōnum</b>	<b>bōnam</b>	<b>bōnum</b>	<b>Bōnōs</b>	<b>bōnās</b>	<b>bōnā</b>
Gen.	<b>Bōnī</b>	<b>bōnae</b>	<b>bōnī</b>	<b>Bōnōrum</b>	<b>bōnārum</b>	<b>bōnōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>Bōnō</b>	<b>bōnae</b>	<b>bōnō</b>	<b>Bōnīs</b>	<b>bōnīs</b>	<b>bōnīs</b>
Abl.	<b>Bōnō</b>	<b>bōnā</b>	<b>bōnō</b>	<b>Bōnīs</b>	<b>bōnīs</b>	<b>bōnīs</b>

	Singular.					
N. V.	Tēnēr, tēnēr-ā, tēnēr-um			Nīgēr, nīgēr-ā, nīgēr-um		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Acc.	Tēnēr- <b>um</b>	<b>am</b>	<b>um</b>	Nīgēr- <b>um</b>	<b>am</b>	<b>um</b>
Gen.	Tēnēr- <b>ī</b>	<b>ae</b>	<b>ī</b>	Nīgēr- <b>ī</b>	<b>ae</b>	<b>ī</b>
Dat.	Tēnēr- <b>ō</b>	<b>ae</b>	<b>ō</b>	Nīgēr- <b>ō</b>	<b>ae</b>	<b>ō</b>
Abl.	Tēnēr- <b>ō</b>	<b>ā</b>	<b>ō</b>	Nīgēr- <b>ō</b>	<b>ā</b>	<b>ō</b>

	Plural.					
N. V.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Acc.	Tēnēr- <b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	Nīgēr- <b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>
Gen.	Tēnēr- <b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	Nīgēr- <b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>
D. Abl.	Tēnēr- <b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	Nīgēr- <b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>

## Decline:

as bōnūs:  
cārūs, *dear*  
dūbīūs, *doubtful*  
dūrūs, *hard*  
fēcundūs, *fruitful*  
mālūs, *bad*  
pallīdūs, *pale*.

as tēnēr:  
aspēr, *rough*  
lācēr, *torn*  
libēr, *free*  
mīsēr, *wretched*  
cornīgēr, *horned*  
frūgīfēr, *fruitful*.\*

as nīgēr:  
aegēr, *sick*  
ātēr, *jet-black*  
crēbēr, *frequent*  
pulchēr, *beautiful*  
rūbēr, *red*  
sācēr, *sacred*.

\* And many other Adjectives compounded with the Verbs gērō, fērō. Dextēr, *at the right hand, propitious*, is declined either as tēnēr or nīgēr.



§ 33. B. All other Adjectives follow the Third Declension: as, *mēliōr*, *better*; *tristīs*, *sad*; *fēlix*, *happy*; *ingens*, *vast*.

Singular.

	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N. V.	<b>Mēliōr</b>	<b>mēliūs</b>	<b>Tristīs</b>	<b>tristē</b>
Acc.	<b>Mēliōrem</b>	<b>mēliūs</b>	<b>Tristem</b>	<b>tristē</b>
Gen.	<b>Mēliōris</b>		<b>Tristīs</b>	
Dat.	<b>Mēliōri</b>		<b>Tristī</b>	
Abl.	<b>Mēliōrē or ī</b>		<b>Tristī</b>	

Plural.

N. V. A.	<b>Mēliōrēs</b>	<b>mēliōrā</b>	<b>Tristēs</b>	<b>tristīā</b>
Gen.	<b>Mēliōrum</b>		<b>Tristīum</b>	
D. Abl.	<b>Mēliōribūs.</b>		<b>Tristībūs.</b>	

Singular.

	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N. V.	<b>Fēlix</b>		<b>Ingens</b>	
Acc.	<b>Fēlicem</b>	<b>fēlix</b>	<b>Ingentem</b>	<b>ingens</b>
Gen.	<b>Fēlicis</b>		<b>Ingentis</b>	
Dat.	<b>Fēlicī</b>		<b>Ingentī</b>	
Abl.	<b>Fēlicī*</b>		<b>Ingentī or ē</b>	

Plural.

N. V. A.	<b>Fēlicēs</b>	<b>fēlicīā</b>	<b>Ingentēs</b>	<b>ingentīā</b>
Gen.	<b>Fēlicīum</b>		<b>Ingentīum</b>	
D. Abl.	<b>Fēlicībūs.</b>		<b>Ingentībūs.</b>	

C. Adjectives in *er*, of the Third Declension, have Three Endings in Nom. Sing.: as, N. *cēlēr*, *cēlērīs*, *cēlērē*, *swift*; N. *ācēr*, *ācērīs*, *ācērē*, *keen*.

Singular.

	Cēlēr, cēlēr-īs, cēlēr-ē			Ācēr, ācēr-īs, ācēr-ē		
	M.F.	N.		M.F.	N.	
N. V.						
Acc.	Cēlēr- <b>em</b>	<b>ē</b>	Ācēr- <b>em</b>	<b>ē</b>		
Gen.	Cēlēr- <b>īs</b>		Ācēr- <b>īs</b>			
D. Abl.	Cēlēr- <b>ī</b>		Ācēr- <b>ī</b>			

Plural.

N. V. A.	Cēlēr- <b>ēs</b>	<b>īā</b>	Ācēr- <b>ēs</b>	<b>īā</b>
Gen.	Cēlēr- <b>īum</b>		Ācēr- <b>īum</b>	
D. Abl.	Cēlēr- <b>ībūs</b>		Ācēr- <b>ībūs</b>	

Decline :

as *mēliōr*:  
audācīōr, *bolder*  
dūrīōr, *harder*.

as *fēlix*:  
audax (āc-), *bold*  
fērox (ōc-), *haughty*.

as *cēlēr*:  
(none).

as *tristīs*:  
brēvīs, *short*  
fācīlīs, *easy*.

as *ingens*:  
āmans, *loving*  
sāpīens, *wise*.

as *ācēr*:  
ālācēr, *brisk*  
ēquestēr, *knightly*.

\* Rarely *ē*.

## § 34. NUMERAL AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

Some Numeral and Pronominal Adjectives form Gen. Sing. in *iūs*, and Dat. Sing. in *ī*: as, *ūnūs*, *one*; *ālīūs*, *other*, *another*; *altēr*, *one of two*, *the other*; *ūtēr*, *which of two*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	<b>Ūnūs</b>	<b>ūnā</b>	<b>ūnum</b>	<b>Ūnī</b>	<b>ūnae</b>	<b>ūnā</b>
Acc.	<b>Ūnum</b>	<b>ūnam</b>	<b>ūnum</b>	<b>Ūnōs</b>	<b>ūnās</b>	<b>ūnā</b>
Gen.	<b>Ūnīūs</b>	<b>ūnīūs</b>	<b>ūnīūs</b>	<b>Ūnōrum</b>	<b>ūnārum</b>	<b>ūnōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>Ūnī</b>	<b>ūnī</b>	<b>ūnī</b>	<b>Ūnīs</b>	<b>ūnīs</b>	<b>ūnīs</b>
Abl.	<b>Ūnō</b>	<b>ūnā</b>	<b>ūnō</b>	<b>Ūnīs</b>	<b>ūnīs</b>	<b>ūnīs</b>
Nom.	<b>Ālīūs</b>	<b>ālīā</b>	<b>ālīūd</b>	<b>Ālīī</b>	<b>ālīae</b>	<b>ālīā</b>
Acc.	<b>Ālīum</b>	<b>ālīam</b>	<b>ālīūd</b>	<b>Ālīōs</b>	<b>ālīās</b>	<b>ālīā</b>
Gen.	<b>Ālīūs</b>	<b>ālīūs</b>	<b>ālīūs</b>	<b>Ālīōrum</b>	<b>ālīārum</b>	<b>ālīōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>Ālīī</b>	<b>ālīī</b>	<b>ālīī</b>	<b>Ālīīs</b>	<b>ālīīs</b>	<b>ālīīs</b>
Abl.	<b>Ālīō</b>	<b>ālīā</b>	<b>ālīō</b>	<b>Ālīīs</b>	<b>ālīīs</b>	<b>ālīīs</b>

## Singular.

Nom.	Altēr, altēr-ā, altēr-um			Ūtēr, ūtr-ā, ūtr-um		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Acc.	Altēr- <b>um</b>	<b>am</b>	<b>um</b>	Ūtr- <b>um</b>	<b>am</b>	<b>um</b>
Gen.	Altēr- <b>īūs</b>	<b>īūs</b>	<b>īūs</b>	Ūtr- <b>īūs</b>	<b>īūs</b>	<b>īūs</b>
Dat.	Altēr- <b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>	Ūtr- <b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>
Abl.	Altēr- <b>ō</b>	<b>ā</b>	<b>ō</b>	Ūtr- <b>ō</b>	<b>ā</b>	<b>ō</b>

## Plural.

Nom.	Altēr- <b>ī</b>	<b>ae</b>	<b>ā</b>	Ūtr- <b>ī</b>	<b>ae</b>	<b>ā</b>
Acc.	Altēr- <b>ōs</b>	<b>ās</b>	<b>ā</b>	Ūtr- <b>ōs</b>	<b>ās</b>	<b>ā</b>
Gen.	Altēr- <b>ōrum</b>	<b>ārum</b>	<b>ōrum</b>	Ūtr- <b>ōrum</b>	<b>ārum</b>	<b>ōrum</b>
D. Abl.	Altēr- <b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	Ūtr- <b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>

Decline like *ūnūs*: *ullūs*, *any at all*; *nullūs*, *none*, *no*; *sōlūs*, *alone*; *tōtūs*, *whole*.

Like *ūtēr*: *neūtēr*, *neither*; *ūterquē*, *each* (of two); *ūtērvīs*, *ūterlibēt*, *which you will*; *ūtercumquē*, *whichever of the two*. The suffixes *-quē*, *-vīs*, *-libēt*, *-cumquē*, are appended to each case-form: as, *ūtērvīsquē*, *ūtērvīs*, *utrōlibēt*, *ūtērvīsquē*. *Altērūtēr*, *one or the other*, is usually declined as *ūtēr*. But Gen. *altērīūs-ūtērvīs* is found.

	Dŭo, <i>two</i> . Plural.			Trēs, <i>three</i> . Plural.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. F.	N.
Nom.	<b>Dŭo</b>	<b>dŭae</b>	<b>dŭo</b>	<b>Trēs</b>	<b>triā</b>
Acc.	<b>Dŭos or dŭo</b>	<b>dŭās</b>	<b>dŭo</b>	<b>Trēs</b>	<b>triā</b>
Gen.	<b>Dŭorum</b>	<b>dŭārum</b>	<b>dŭorum</b>	<b>Trium</b>	<b>triūm</b>
D. Abl.	<b>Dŭobŭs</b>	<b>dŭābŭs</b>	<b>dŭobŭs.</b>	<b>Tribŭs</b>	<b>tribŭs.</b>

Decline as dŭo: ambō, *both*.

The other Cardinal Numbers (quattuor, *four*; quinquē, *five*; sex, *six*; septem, *seven*; octo, *eight*; novem, *nine*; dēcem, *ten*, &c.; to centum, *a hundred*) are undeclined. Millē, *a thousand*, is an indeclinable Adjective. The Neuter Plural, milliā, *thousands*, is a Substantive, and declined like Māriā. (See Table of Numerals, p. 129.)

## COMPARISON.

§ 35. The ADJECTIVE has THREE DEGREES of Comparison; the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative: as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Dŭrŭs, <i>hard</i>	dŭriōr, <i>harder</i>	dŭrissimŭs, <i>hardest</i> .

The Comparative may be formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *īōr*.

The Superlative may be formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *issimŭs*: as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Dŭrŭs, <i>hard</i>	Gen. dŭr- <b>ī</b>	dŭr- <b>īōr</b>
Brēvis, <i>short</i>	„ brēv- <b>īs</b>	brēv- <b>īōr</b>
Audāx, <i>bold</i>	„ audāc- <b>īs</b>	audāc- <b>īōr</b>
		dŭr- <b>issimŭs</b>
		brēv- <b>issimŭs</b>
		audāc- <b>issimŭs.</b>

(1) Adjectives in *-er* form the Superlative by adding *-rimŭs* to the Nominative: as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Pulchēr, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchr- <b>īōr</b>	pulcher- <b>rimŭs</b>
Cēlēr, <i>swift</i>	cēlēr- <b>īōr</b>	cēler- <b>rimŭs.</b>

Vētŭs, *ancient*, forms Superl. vēter-**rimŭs.**

(2) The following form the Superlative by changing *is* into *imŭs*:

Fācilis, <i>easy</i>	Sīmilis, <i>like</i>	Grācilis, <i>slender</i>
Diffīcilis, <i>difficult</i>	Dissīmilis, <i>unlike</i>	Hūmilis, <i>lowly.</i>

Superl. fācil-**imŭs**, sīmil-**imŭs**, grācil-**imŭs**, hūmil-**imŭs**, &c.

## § 36. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Bõnūs, <i>good</i>	měļõr	optīmūs.
Mālūs, <i>bad</i>	pějõr	pessimūs.
Magnūs, <i>great</i>	mājõr	maxīmūs.
Parvūs, <i>small</i>	mīnõr	mīnīmūs.
Multūs, <i>much</i>	(plūs, Neut.)	plūrīmūs.
Nēquam, <i>worthless</i>	nēquiõr	nēquissīmūs.

Note 1. The Comparative of multūs has no Masc. or Fem. Singular; but full Plural: Nom. Acc. plūrēs, plūrā, Gen. plūrium, D. Abl. plūrībūs.

Note 2. Divēs, *rich*, often contracts divīt- into dīt-: as, Comp. divītõr or dītõr, Superl. divītissīmūs or dītissīmūs.

Note 3. Sēnex, *old* (generally an *old man*), has Comp. sēnõr. Jūvėnīs, *young* (generally a *youth*, Fem. not used), has Comp. jūnõr, Masc. or Fem. But *older* is often nātū mājõr, or mājõr only; *eldest*, nātū maxīmūs, or maxīmūs; *younger*, nātū mīnõr, or mīnõr; *youngest*, nātū mīnīmūs, or mīnīmūs.

Note 4. Adjectives of Position spring from Prepositions:—

Preposition.	Positive Adj.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Ē, <i>ex, out of</i>	extěrūs, <i>outside</i>	extěrõr	extrēmūs (extīmūs)
Intrā, <i>within</i>	—	intěrõr	intīmūs
Sūpēr, <i>above</i>	sūpěrūs, <i>high above</i>	sūpěrõr	sūprēmūs (summūs)
Infrā, <i>below</i>	infěrūs, <i>deep below</i>	infěrõr	infīmūs (tmūs)
Prae, <i>before</i>	—	prõr	prīmūs, <i>first</i>
Post, <i>after</i>	postěrūs, <i>next after</i>	postěrõr	postrēmūs (postūmūs)
Cītrā, <i>on near side</i>	—	cītěrõr	cītīmūs
Ultrā, <i>beyond</i>	—	ultěrõr	ultīmūs, <i>last</i>
Prõpě, <i>near</i>	—	prõpĩr	proxīmūs
Dē, <i>down from</i>	—	dětěrõr, <i>worse</i>	dětterrīmūs, <i>worst</i>

Obs. Adjectives in *us* pure\* use in Comparison mągīs, maxīmē; as, dūbīūs. *doubtful*, mągīs dūbīūs, maxīmē dūbīūs. Adjectives in -dicūs, -ficūs, -võlūs change ūs into Comp. -entõr, Superl. -entissīmūs; as, magnīficūs, magnīficentõr, magnīficentissīmūs. Ōciõr, *swifter*, ōcissīmūs, has no Positive. Many Adjectives have a Positive only: some have a Comparative without a Superlative, many a Superlative without a Comparative.

## § 37. ADVERBS derived from Adjectives imitate their Comparison, with endings, Comparative ūs, Superlative ē.

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adj.	Dignūs, <i>worthy</i>	dignĩõr	dignissīmūs.
Adv.	Dignē, <i>worthily</i>	dignĩūs	dignissīmē.
Adj.	Grāvīs, <i>weighty</i>	grāvĩõr	grāvissīmūs.
Adv.	Grāvītēr, <i>weightily</i>	grāvĩūs	grāvissīmē.
a. So:	Saepě, <i>often</i>	saepĩūs	saepissīmē.
	Dīū, <i>long</i>	dīūtĩūs	dīūtissīmē.
But:	Multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrium.
	Magnõpěrě, <i>greatly</i>	mągīs, <i>more</i>	maxīmē.

\* A pure Syllable is one which follows a Vowel.

## PRONOUNS.

§ 38. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns are purely Substantival; the rest are generally Adjectival, but are often used Substantively.

## (1) PERSONAL.

## 1. FIRST PERSON.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<b>Ěgŏ</b> , <i>I</i>	<b>Nŏs</b> , <i>we</i>
Acc.	<b>Mĕ</b> , <i>me</i>	<b>Nŏs</b> , <i>us</i>
Gen.	<b>Mĕi</b> , <i>of me</i>	<b>Nostrĭ</b> , or <b>Nostrum</b> , <i>of us</i>
Dat.	<b>Mĭhĭ</b> , <i>to or for me</i>	<b>Nŏbĭs</b> , <i>to or for us</i>
Abl.	<b>Mĕ</b> , ( <i>with</i> ) <i>me</i>	<b>Nŏbĭs</b> , ( <i>with</i> ) <i>us</i> .

## 2. SECOND PERSON.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	<b>Tŭ</b> , <i>thou</i>	<b>Vŏs</b> , <i>ye</i>
Acc.	<b>Tĕ</b> , <i>thee</i>	<b>Vŏs</b> , <i>you</i>
Gen.	<b>Tŭi</b> , <i>of thee</i>	<b>Vestri</b> , or <b>Vestrum</b> , <i>of you</i>
Dat.	<b>Tĭbĭ</b> , <i>to or for thee</i>	<b>Vŏbĭs</b> , <i>to or for you</i>
Abl.	<b>Tĕ</b> , ( <i>with</i> ) <i>thee</i>	<b>Vŏbĭs</b> , ( <i>with</i> ) <i>you</i> .

## (2) REFLEXIVE (THIRD PERSON).

## Singular and Plural.

Nom.	(wanting.)
Acc.	<b>Sĕ</b> ( <i>sĕsĕ</i> ), <i>himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>
Gen.	<b>Sŭi</b> , <i>of himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>
Dat.	<b>Sĭbĭ</b> , <i>to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>
Abl.	<b>Sĕ</b> ( <i>sĕsĕ</i> ), ( <i>with</i> ) <i>himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>

## (3) POSSESSIVE.

As Bŏnŭs, decline :

Mĕŭs, mĕă, mĕum, *my, mine.*

Tŭŭs, tŭă, tŭum, *thy, thine.*

Sŭŭs, sŭă, sŭum, *his, her, its, their own.*

Cŭjŭs, cŭjă, cŭjum, *whose; whose?*

As Nĭgĕr:

Nostĕr, nostră, noŭtrum, *our.*

Vestĕr, vestră, vestrum, *your.*

*Note.* Mĕŭs has Vocative Masculine mĭ. Tŭŭs, sŭŭs, have none.

## (4) DEMONSTRATIVE.

## 1. SIMPLE OR UNEMPHATIC.

Īs, *that* (or *he, she, it*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	<b>Īs</b>	<b>ěā</b>	<b>īd</b>	<b>Īi</b>	<b>ěae</b>	<b>ěā</b>
Acc.	<b>Ěum</b>	<b>ěam</b>	<b>īd</b>	<b>Ěōs</b>	<b>ěās</b>	<b>ěā</b>
Gen.	<b>Ějūs</b>	<b>ějūs</b>	<b>ějūs</b>	<b>Ěōrum</b>	<b>ěārum</b>	<b>ěōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>Ěī</b>	<b>ěī</b>	<b>ěī</b>		<b>Īis or ěis</b>	
Abl.	<b>Ěō</b>	<b>ěā</b>	<b>ěō</b>		<b>Īis or ěis</b>	

## 2. EMPHATIC.

Hīc, *this* (*near me*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	<b>Hīc</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>Hī</b>	<b>hae</b>	<b>haec</b>
Acc.	<b>Hunc</b>	<b>hanc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>Hōs</b>	<b>hās</b>	<b>haec</b>
Gen.	<b>Hūjūs</b>	<b>hūjūs</b>	<b>hūjūs</b>	<b>Hōrum</b>	<b>hārum</b>	<b>hōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>Huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>Hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>
Abl.	<b>Hōc</b>	<b>hāc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>Hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>

Illě, *that* (*yonder*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	<b>Illě</b>	<b>illā</b>	<b>illūd</b>	<b>Illī</b>	<b>illae</b>	<b>illā</b>
Acc.	<b>Illum</b>	<b>illam</b>	<b>illūd</b>	<b>Illōs</b>	<b>illās</b>	<b>illā</b>
Gen.	<b>Illīūs</b>	<b>illīūs</b>	<b>illīūs</b>	<b>Illōrum</b>	<b>illārum</b>	<b>illōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>Illī</b>	<b>illī</b>	<b>illī</b>	<b>Illīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>
Abl.	<b>Illō</b>	<b>illā</b>	<b>illō</b>	<b>Illīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>

Istě, *that* (*near you*), is declined like Illě.(5) DEFINITIVE. (Īdem, *same*; ipsě, *self*.)

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	<b>Īdem</b>	<b>ěādem</b>	<b>īdem</b>	<b>Īdem</b>	<b>ěaedem</b>	<b>ěādem</b>
Acc.	<b>Ěundem</b>	<b>ěandem</b>	<b>īdem</b>	<b>Ěosdem</b>	<b>ěasdem</b>	<b>ěādem</b>
Gen.	<b>Ějusdem</b>	<b>ėjusdem</b>	<b>ėjusdem</b>	<b>Ěōrundem</b>	<b>ěārundem</b>	<b>ěōrundem</b>
Dat.	<b>Ěīdem</b>	<b>ěīdem</b>	<b>ěīdem</b>		<b>Īsdem or ěisdem</b>	
Abl.	<b>Ěōdem</b>	<b>ěādem</b>	<b>ěōdem</b>		<b>Īsdem or ěisdem.</b>	

Ipsě is declined like Illě, but with Neuter Singular N. Acc. ipsum. It forms a Superlative ipsissimūs, *very self*.

(6) RELATIVE. (*Qui, who, or which.*)

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	<b>Qui</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quod</b>	<b>Qui</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quae</b>
Acc.	<b>Quem</b>	<b>quam</b>	<b>quod</b>	<b>Quos</b>	<b>quas</b>	<b>quae</b>
Gen.	<b>Cujus</b>	<b>cujus</b>	<b>cujus</b>	<b>Quorum</b>	<b>quarum</b>	<b>quorum</b>
Dat.	<b>Cui</b>	<b>cui</b>	<b>cui</b>	<b>Quibus or quis</b>		
Abl.	<b>Quo</b>	<b>qua</b>	<b>quo</b>	<b>Quibus or quis.</b>		

(7) INTERROGATIVE.

	Singular.		
Nom.	<b>Quis</b>	<b>(quis)</b>	<b>quid</b>
	<b>Qui</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quod</b>
Acc.	<b>Quem</b>	<b>quam</b>	<b>quid</b>
	<b>Quem</b>	<b>quam</b>	<b>quod</b>
	&c.	&c.	&c.

\* who, or what?

(8) INDEFINITE.

	Singular.		
Nom.	<b>Quis</b>	<b>qua</b>	<b>quid</b>
	<b>Qui</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quod</b>
Acc.	<b>Quem</b>	<b>quam</b>	<b>quid</b>
	<b>Quem</b>	<b>quam</b>	<b>quod</b>
	&c.	&c.	&c.

\* any one.

In the other forms as Relative.

In the other forms as Relative.

Indefinite Pl. Nom. *Qui, quae, qua or quae.*

(9) COMPOUNDS OF RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE.

1. *Quisnam, quidnam; quinam, quaenam, quodnam, who, what?*
2. *Ecquis (for en-quis), equa, equid? Ecqui, ecquae, ecquod, anyone? (Interrogative). So Numquis, siquis, &c.*
3. *Aliquis, aliqua, aliquid; Aliqui, aliqua, aliquid, some one.*
4. *Quispiam, quaequam, quippiam (quodpiam), anyone.*
5. *Quisquam, quicquam; Genitive, cujusquam, &c., anyone at all.*
6. *Quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), a certain one.*
7. *Quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whosoever, whatsoever.*
8. *Quisquis, whosoever, quidquid, whatsoever.*
9. *Quivis, quaevis, quidvis (quodvis), any you will.*
10. *Quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet (quodlibet), any you please.*
11. *Quisque, quaeque, quicque; Quisque, quaeque, quodque, each. So Unusquisque, unaquaeque, unumquicque (-quodque), each one.*

a. These Compounds are declined as their Primitives, the undeclined suffix or prefix accompanying each case, as Gen. *cujusnam, alicujus, cujuscumque, &c., &c.*

Note. Correlatives include an Interrogative, Demonstrative, Relative, Indefinite, Universals: as, *quis?—is—qui—quis (aliquis)—quicumque (quisquis), &c.*

THE PRONOMINAL CORRELATIVES QUALIS, &c.

Interrog.	Demonst.	Relat.	Indefinite.	Univ.
<i>Qualis, of what kind?</i>	<i>talis, such</i>	<i>qualis, as</i>		<i>qualiscumque, of what kind soever.</i>
<i>Quantus, how great?</i>	<i>tantus, so great</i>	<i>quantus, as</i>	<i>aliquantus, of some size</i>	<i>quantuscumque, how great soever.</i>
<i>Quot, how many?</i>	<i>tot, so many</i>	<i>quot, as</i>	<i>aliquot, some few</i>	<i>quotcumque, how many soever.</i>

\* The forms *Quis, quid*, are Substantival; *Qui, quod*, Adjectival.

## VERBS.

§ 39. The Verb has two VOICES. (1) the ACTIVE VOICE ; as, *āmō*, *I love* : (2) the PASSIVE ; as, *āmōr*, *I am loved*.

§ 40. A DEONENT Verb is chiefly PASSIVE in form, but ACTIVE in sense ; as, *hortōr*, *I exhort*.

§ 41. Active and Deponent Verbs are either—

- (1) TRANSITIVE, acting on an object : as, *āmō ěum*, *I love him*, or
- (2) INTRANSITIVE, not acting on an object : as, *stō*, *I stand*.

*Obs.* Verbs Intransitive have no personal Passive : see § 76.

§ 42. The Verb has two parts :

I. FINITE. II. INFINITE.

I. The VERB FINITE has three MOODS.

- (1) The INDICATIVE ; as, *āmō*, *I love*.
- (2) The CONJUNCTIVE ; as, *āmem* (variously rendered : see § 66).
- (3) The IMPERATIVE ; as, *āmā*, *love thou*.

§ 43. Time is expressed by TENSES.

There are six Tense-forms of the Verb Finite : the Present, Simple-Future, Imperfect, Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect. Other Tenses are formed by the verb *Sum*, *essē* (*to be*), with Participles.

§ 44. Tenses have each (1) two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural ; and (2) three PERSONS in each Number.

The First Person speaks : as, *āmō*, *I love* ; *āmāmūs*, *we love*.

The Second Person is spoken to : as, *āmās*, *thou lovest* ; *āmātīs*, *ye love*.

The Third Person is spoken of : as, *āmāt*, *he loves* ; *āmant*, *they love*.

*Obs.* The Pronouns, *ěgō*, *nōs*, *tū*, *vōs*, *īs*, *īi*, are severally implied in the Personal Endings.

§ 45. II. The VERB INFINITE consists of Verb-nouns :

- (1) The INFINITIVE, having several Tense-forms.
- (2) The GERUND, } Verbal Substantives, which supply Cases
- (3) The two SUPINES, } to the Infinitive.
- (4) PARTICIPLES, or Verbal Adjectives, one of which ends in *dūs*, and is called GERUNDIVE.



§ 46. There are Four regular CONJUGATIONS (three of Vowel Verbs, one of Consonant and U-verbs), of which the PRESENT-STEM and CHARACTER are shown in the Imperative or Infinitive.

ACTIVE VERBS.

		Ind. Pres.	Imperative.	Infinitive.	
1st CONJ.	<b>A</b> -verbs	Āmō	āmĀ	āmĀ-rě	<i>love</i>
2nd CONJ.	<b>E</b> -verbs	Mōněō	mōnĒ	mōnĒ-rě	<i>advise</i>
3rd CONJ.	<b>Cons.</b> -verbs	Rěgō	rěg-ě	rěg-ěřě	<i>rule</i>
	<b>U</b> -verbs	Indŭō	indŭ-ě	indŭ-ěřě	<i>put on</i>
4th CONJ.	<b>I</b> -verbs	Audĭō	audĪ	audĪ-rě	<i>hear.</i>

DEPONENT VERBS.

1st CONJ.	<b>A</b> -verbs	Vĕnŏr	vĕnĀ-rě	vĕnĀ-rĭ	<i>hunt</i>
2nd CONJ.	<b>E</b> -verbs	Vĕrĕŏr	vĕrĒ-rě	vĕrĒ-rĭ	<i>fear</i>
3rd CONJ.	<b>Cons.</b> -verbs	Ūtŏr	ŭt-ěřě	ŭt-ĭ	<i>use</i>
4th CONJ.	<b>I</b> -verbs	Partĭŏr	partĪ-rě	partĪ-rĭ	<i>divide.</i>

§ 47. The PRESENT, PERFECT, and SUPINE-STEMS must be known in order to conjugate a Verb : as,

ACTIVE VERBS.

	Pres. Stem.	Perf. Stem.	Sup. Stem.
1.	Ām <b>A</b> -	āmā <b>V</b> -	āmā <b>T</b> -
2.	Mōn <b>E</b> -	mōn <b>U</b> -	mōnĭ <b>T</b> -
3.	Rě <b>G</b> -	rex- (reg <b>S</b> -)	rec <b>T</b> -
4.	Aud <b>I</b> -	audĭ <b>V</b> -	audĭ <b>T</b> -

DEPONENT VERBS.

	Pres. Stem.	Sup. Stem.
	Vĕn <b>A</b> -	vĕnā <b>T</b> -
	Vĕr <b>E</b> -	vĕrĭ <b>T</b> -
	Ū <b>T</b> -	ŭ <b>S</b> -
	Part <b>I</b> -	partĭ <b>T</b> -

From these the other parts of the Verb may be formed.

DERIVATION OF THE VERB-FORMS.

From PRESENT Stem.	From PERFECT Stem.	From SUPINE Stem.
Present Act. and Pass.	Perfect Act.	Supines
Future Simple A. and P.	Future Perfect Act.	Participle Fut. Act.
Imperf. Act. and Pass.	Pluperfect Act.	Infinitive Fut. Pass.
Imperat. Act. and Pass.	Infinitive Perfect Act.	Participle Perf. Pass.
Infin. Pres. Act. and Pass.		Perfect Pass.
Gerund and Gerundive		Future Perf. Pass.
Participle Pres. Act.		Pluperfect Pass.
		Infinitive Perf. Pass.

a. A Verb, therefore, is sufficiently conjugated thus :

SHORT FORM FOR ACTIVE VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Āmō	Mōñēō	Rēgō	Audiō
Infin. Pres.	āmā-rē	mōñē-rē	rēg-ērē	audi-rē
Perfect	āmāv-ī	mōñū-ī	rex-ī	audi-v-ī
Supine in <i>um</i>	āmāt-um.	mōñit-um.	rect-um.	audit-um.

SHORT FORM FOR DEPONENT OR PASSIVE VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Āmōr	Mōñēōr	Rēgōr	Audiōr
Infin. Pres.	āmā-rī	mōñē-rī	rēg-ī	audi-rī
Partic. Perf.	āmāt-ūs	mōñit-ūs	rect-ūs	audit-ūs
Gerundive	āmandūs.	mōñendūs.	rēgendūs.	audiendūs.

b. Or, as a useful exercise, the following parts may often be repeated :

LONGER FORM FOR ACTIVE VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Āmō	Mōñēō	Rēgō	Audiō
2 Pers. Pres.	āmās	mōñēs	rēgis	audis
Infin. Pres.	āmārē	mōñērē	rēgērē	audirē
Perfect	āmāvī	mōñūī	rexī	audi-vī
Ger. in <i>dum</i>	āmandum	mōñendum	rēgendum*	audiendum
" <i>di</i>	āmandī	mōñendī	rēgendī	audiendī
" <i>do</i>	āmandō	mōñendō	rēgendō	audiendō
Sup. in <i>um</i>	āmātum	mōñitum	rectum	auditum
" <i>u</i>	āmātū	mōñitū	rectū	auditū
Part. Pres.	āmans	mōñens	rēgens	audiens
" Fut.	āmātūrūs.	mōñitūrūs.	rectūrūs.	auditūrūs.

LONGER FORM FOR DEPONENT VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Vēñōr	Vērēōr	Ūtōr	Partiōr
2 Pers. Pres.	vēñārīs	vērērīs	ūtērīs	partīrīs
Infin. Pres.	vēñārī	vērērī	ūtī	partīrī
Perfect	vēñātūs sum	vērītūs sum	ūsūs sum	partītūs sum
Ger. in <i>dum</i>	vēñandum	vērendum	ūtendum	partiendum
" <i>di</i>	vēñandī	vērēndī	ūtēndī	partiēndī
" <i>do</i>	vēñandō	vērēndō	ūtēndō	partiēndō
Gerundive	vēñandūs	vērēndūs	ūtēndūs	partiēndūs
Sup. in <i>um</i>	vēñātum	vērītum	ūsūm	partītum
" <i>u</i>	vēñātū	vērītū	ūsū	partītū
Part. Pres.	vēñans	vērēns	ūtēns	partiēns
" Perf.	vēñātūs	vērītūs	ūsūs	partītūs
" Fut.	vēñātūrūs.	vērītūrūs.	ūsūrūs.	partītūrūs.

\* The forms *-undum -undūs* are sometimes used in the 3rd and 4th Conjugations. Intransitive Verbs form no Gerundive Adjective, and no Supine in *u*.

§ 48. Action and State occur in Time. Time is either simply Present, Past, or Future; or it is Present, Past, or Future with some further relation. The subjoined Scheme (for the Active Voice and Indicative Mood) compares the expression of the relations of Time in Latin and English. But those relations may be still more complex than is here shown: as, *ămătūrūs fűērō, I shall have been about to love.*

	Time.	Indic.	English.	Name of Tense.
Present.	(Simple	ămō . . . .	<i>I love</i>	Present.
	Pres. Relation	ămō . . . .	<i>am loving</i>	
	Past Relation	ămāvī . . . .	<i>have loved</i>	
	Fut. Relation	ămătūrūs sum	<i>am about to love</i>	
Past.	(Simple	ămāvī . . . .	<i>loved</i>	Perfect.
	Pres. Relation	ămābam . . . .	<i>was loving</i>	Imperfect.
	Past Relation	ămāvēram . . . .	<i>had loved</i>	Pluperfect.
	Fut. Relation	ămătūrūs fűī.	<i>was about to love</i>	Fütürum Pěrīphras-ticum Praetērītī.
Future.	(Simple	ămābō . . . .	<i>shall love</i>	Future Simple.
	Pres. Relation	ămābō . . . .	<i>shall be loving</i>	
	Past Relation	ămāvērō . . . .	<i>shall have loved</i>	Future Perfect.
	Fut. Relation	ămătūrūs őrō	<i>shall be about to love</i>	Fütürum Pěrīphras-ticum Fütūrī.

Note 1. The Present, the Futures, and the Present Past (*ămāvī, I have loved*) are called Primary Tenses: the Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Simple Perfect (*ămāvī, I loved*) Historic Tenses.

Note 2. A. The Perfect is formed in several ways:—1. By adding **vi** to the Stem: as, *ămāvī, flēvī*. 2. By adding **ŭī** (for **vi**) to the Stem or Clipt Stem: \* as, *cōlŭī, mōnŭī*. 3. By adding **sī** to the Stem or Clipt Stem: as, *carpsī, mansī*. In this formation Consonants are generally changed (see §81). 4. By prefixing a Reduplication, and adding **i** to the Stem or Clipt Stem. This Reduplication is either the first Consonant and Vowel of the Stem: as, *cŭcŭrri, mōmordi*; or the first Consonant with **ō**, in which case the Stem-vowel is usually changed: as, *cēcīnī* (from *cănō*); see §81; § 111 (9). 5. By adding **i** to the Stem or Clipt Stem, with or without change of the Stem-vowel: as, *blbī, vertī, ęgī* (from *ăgō*), *fāvī* (from *fävēō*).

B. The Supine is formed:—1. By adding to the Stem or Clipt Stem **tum**, sometimes **i-tum**, and a change of letters often takes place: as, *ămătum, cultum, rectum, mōn-i-tum*. 2. The change of letters often requires **tum** to become **sum**. See Examples in § 81.

Note 3. The learner should bear in mind that the English given in the following Tables for the Tenses of Verbs is often only one of several possible meanings; especially in the Conjunctive Mood.

§ 49. Before the regular Verbs, it is necessary to conjugate the irregular but important Verb of Being, *sum, essē*, which lends its forms to complete the conjugation of other Verbs.

\* A Clipt Stem is a Stem without its Vowel Character: as, *mon-* for *monē-*

VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	<p>S. <i>Sum, I am</i>  <i>ēs, thou art</i>  <i>est, he is</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>sūmūs, we are</i>  <i>estīs, ye are</i>  <i>sunt, they are.</i></p> <p>S. <i>erō, I shall</i>  <i>erīs, thou wilt</i>  <i>erīt, he will</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>erīmūs, we shall</i>  <i>erītīs, ye will</i>  <i>erunt, they will</i></p>	<p><i>sim, I may</i>  <i>sīs, thou mayst</i>  <i>sīt, he may</i></p> <p><i>sīmūs, we may</i>  <i>sītīs, ye may</i>  <i>sint, they may</i></p>	<p><i>ēs, be thou</i></p> <p><i>estē, be ye.</i></p> <p><i>estō, thou must be</i>  <i>estō, he must be</i></p> <p><i>estōtē, ye must be</i>  <i>suntō, they must be.</i></p>
Imperfect.	<p>S. <i>eram, I was</i>  <i>erās, thou wast</i>  <i>erāt, he was</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>erāmūs, we were</i>  <i>erātīs, ye were</i>  <i>erant, they were.</i></p>	<p><i>essem vel fōrem, I might</i>  <i>essēs v. fōrēs, thou mightst</i>  <i>essēt v. fōrēt, he might</i></p> <p><i>essēmūs v. fōrēmūs, we might</i>  <i>essētīs v. fōrētīs, ye might</i>  <i>essent v. fōrent, they might</i></p>	<p><i>be.</i></p>

VERB INFINITIVE.

Infinitive Present and Imperfect.  
essē, to be.

Infinitive Perfect and Pluperfect.  
fūissē, to have been.

Infinitive Future.

forē v. fūtūrūs essē, to be about to be.

Gerunds.

None.

Supines.

None.

Participle Present.

None.

Participle Future.

fūtūrūs, about to be.

Fūtūrūs may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: see § 64.

fūerim, I may  
fūerīs, thou mayst  
fūerīt, he may  
fūerīmūs, we may  
fūerītīs, ye may  
fūerint, they may

} have been.

S. fūi, I have  
fūistī, thou hast  
fūit, he has  
Pl. fūimūs, we have  
fūistīs, ye have  
fūerunt vel fūerē, they  
have

\* } been.

S. fūerō, I shall  
fūerīs, thou wilt  
fūerīt, he will  
Pl. fūerīmūs, we shall  
fūerītīs, ye will  
fūerint, they will

} have been.

fūissem, I should  
fūisēs, thou wouldst  
fūissēt, he would  
fūissēmūs, we should  
fūissētīs, ye would  
fūissent, they would

} have been.

S. fūeram, I had  
fūerās, thou hadst  
fūerāt, he had  
Pl. fūerāmūs, we had  
fūerātīs, ye had  
fūerant, they had

} been.

Like Sum decline its compounds absūm, adsum, dēsum, insum, intersum, praesum, prosum, subsum, sūpersum. Prōsum takes *d* before *e*, as, Prōsum, prōdēs, prōdēt, prōsūmūs, prōdētīs, prōsunt. Absūm has Pres. Part. absens; praesum, praesens. Possum will be noticed hereafter.

\* Or, 'I was, thou wast,' &c.

THE FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.  
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
S. <i>Āmō, I love</i> <i>āmās, thou lovest</i> <i>āmāt, he loves</i> Pl. <i>āmāmūs, we love</i> <i>āmātīs, ye love</i> <i>āmānt, they love.</i>	S. <i>āmābō, I shall</i> <i>āmābīs, thou wilt</i> <i>āmābīt, he will</i> Pl. <i>āmābīmūs, we shall</i> <i>āmābītīs, ye will</i> <i>āmābunt, they will</i>	<p> <i>āmēm, I may</i>  <i>āmēs, thou mayst</i>  <i>āmēt, he may</i>  <i>āmēmūs, we may</i>  <i>āmētīs, ye may</i>  <i>āmēt, they may</i> </p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>love.</i></p>	<p> <i>āmā, love thou</i>   <i>āmātē, love ye.</i> </p> <p> <i>āmātō, thou</i>  <i>āmātō, he</i> </p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>must love.</i></p> <p> <i>āmātōtē, ye</i>  <i>āmāntō, they</i> </p>
Imperfect.	S. <i>āmābam, I was</i> <i>āmābās, thou wast</i> <i>āmābāt, he was</i> Pl. <i>āmābāmūs, we were</i> <i>āmābātīs, ye were</i> <i>āmābant, they were</i>	<p> <i>āmārem, I might</i>  <i>āmārēs, thou mightst</i>  <i>āmārēt, he might</i>  <i>āmārēmūs, we might</i>  <i>āmārētīs, ye might</i>  <i>āmārent, they might</i> </p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>love.</i></p>	

Perfect.	<p>S. <i>āmāvī, I loved*</i>  <i>āmāvistī, thou lovedst</i>  <i>āmāvīt, he loved</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>āmāvīmūs, we loved</i>  <i>āmāvistīs, ye loved</i>  <i>āmāv-ērunt v. āmāv-ērē,</i>  <i>they loved.</i></p>	<p><i>āmāvērīm, I may</i>  <i>āmāvērīs, thou mayst</i>  <i>āmāvērīt, he may</i>  <i>āmāvērīmūs, we may</i>  <i>āmāvērīcis, ye may</i>  <i>āmāvērīnt, they may</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have</i>  } <i>loved.</i></p>	<p>VERB INFINITE.</p> <p>Inf. Pres. Imp. <i>āmārē, to love.</i>  Inf. Perf. Plup. <i>āmāvissē, to have</i>  <i>loved.</i>  Inf. Fut. . . <i>āmātūrūs essē, to be</i>  <i>about to love.</i>  Ger. Nom. Ac. <i>āmāndum, loving.</i>  Ger. Gen. . . <i>āmāndī, of loving.</i>  Ger. Dat. Abl. <i>āmāndō, for or by</i>  <i>loving.</i>  Sup. in <i>um.</i> . <i>āmātum, to love.</i>  Sup. in <i>u.</i> . . <i>āmātū, in loving, or</i>  <i>to be loved.</i>  Part. Pres. . . <i>āmans, loving.</i>  Part. Fut. . . <i>āmātūrūs, about to</i>  <i>love.</i></p>
Future Perfect.	<p>S. <i>āmāvērō, I shall</i>  <i>āmāvērīs, thou wilt</i>  <i>āmāvērīt, he will</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>āmāvērīmūs, we shall</i>  <i>āmāvērītīs, ye will</i>  <i>āmāvērīnt, they will</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have</i>  } <i>loved.</i></p>		
Pluperfect.	<p>S. <i>āmāvēram, I had</i>  <i>āmāvērās, thou hadst</i>  <i>āmāvērāt, he had</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>āmāvērāmūs, we had</i>  <i>āmāvērāīs, ye had</i>  <i>āmāvērānt, they had</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>loved.</i></p>	<p><i>āmāvissēm, I should</i>  <i>āmāvissēs, thou wouldst</i>  <i>āmāvissēt, he would</i>  <i>āmāvissēmūs, we should</i>  <i>āmāvissētīs, ye would</i>  <i>āmāvissēnt, they would</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have</i>  } <i>loved.</i></p>	

\* Or, 'I have loved, thou hast loved,' &amp;c.

## VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	<p>S. mōnēbō, <i>I shall</i>  mōnēbīs, <i>thou wilt</i>  mōnēbīt, <i>he will</i>  <i>advise.</i></p> <p>Pl. mōnēbīmūs, <i>we shall</i>  mōnēbītīs, <i>ye will</i>  mōnēbunt, <i>they will</i></p>	<p>mōnēam, <i>I may</i>  mōnēās, <i>thou mayst</i>  mōnēāt, <i>he may</i>  <i>advise.</i></p> <p>mōnēāmūs, <i>we may</i>  mōnēātīs, <i>ye may</i>  mōnēant, <i>they may</i></p>	<p>mōnē, <i>advise thou</i>  mōnētē, <i>advise ye.</i></p> <p>mōnētō, <i>thou</i>  mōnētō, <i>he</i>  mōnētōtē, <i>ye'</i>  mōnentō, <i>they</i> } <i>must advise.</i></p>
Imperfect.	<p>S. mōnēbam, <i>I was</i>  mōnēbās, <i>thou wast</i>  mōnēbāt, <i>he was</i>  <i>advising.</i></p> <p>Pl. mōnēbāmūs, <i>we were</i>  mōnēbātīs, <i>ye were</i>  mōnēbant, <i>they were</i></p>	<p>mōnērem, <i>I might</i>  mōnērēs, <i>thou mightst</i>  mōnērēt, <i>he might</i>  <i>advise.</i></p> <p>mōnērēmūs, <i>we might</i>  mōnērētīs, <i>ye might</i>  mōnērēnt, <i>they might</i></p>	



VERB INFINITE.

Inf. Pres. Imp. mōnērē, to advise.  
 Inf. Perf. Plup. mōnūissē, to have advised.

Inf. Fut. . . mōnītūrūs essē, to be about to advise.

Ger. Nom. Ac. mōnendum, advising.

Ger. Gen. . . mōnendī, of advising.

Ger. Dat. Abl. mōnendō, for or by advising.

Sup. in *um* . . mōnītum, to advise.

Sup. in *u* . . mōnītū, in advising or to be advised.

Part. Pres. . . mōnens, advising.

Part. Fut. . . mōnītūrūs, about to advise.

mōnūērim, I may have advised.  
 mōnūērīs, thou mayst have advised.  
 mōnūērīt, he may have advised.  
 mōnūērīmūs, we may have advised.  
 mōnūērītīs, ye may have advised.  
 mōnūērīnt, they may have advised.

mōnūissem, I should have advised.  
 mōnūissēs, thou wouldst have advised.  
 mōnūissēt, he would have advised.  
 mōnūissēmūs, we should have advised.  
 mōnūissētīs, ye would have advised.  
 mōnūissēnt, they would have advised.

S. mōnū, I advised.\*  
 mōnūistī, thou adviseds  
 mōnūit, he advised  
 Pl. mōnūimūs, we advised  
 mōnūistīs, ye advised  
 mōnū-ērunt v. mōnū-ērē, they advised.

S. mōnūērō, I shall have advised.  
 mōnūērīs, thou wilt have advised.  
 mōnūērīt, he will have advised.  
 Pl. mōnūērīmūs, we shall have advised.  
 mōnūērītīs, ye will have advised.  
 mōnūērīnt, they will have advised.

S. mōnūēram, I had advised.  
 mōnūērās, thou hadst advised.  
 mōnūērāt, he had advised.  
 Pl. mōnūērāmūs, we had advised.  
 mōnūērātīs, ye had advised.  
 mōnūērānt, they had advised.

Perfect.

Future Perfect.

Pluperfect.

\* Or, 'I have advised,' &c.

THE THIRD CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.  
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
S. Rēgō, I rule rēgis, thou rulest rēgīt, he rules	Pl. rēgīmūs, we rule rēgītīs, ye rule rēgunt, they rule.	rēgam, I may rēgās, thou mayst rēgūt, he may rēgāmūs, we may rēgātīs, ye may rēgant, they may	rēgē, rule thou *  rēgītē, rule ye.
S. rēgam, I shall rēgēs, thou wilt rēgēt, he will	Pl. rēgēmūs, we shall rēgētīs, ye will rēgent, they will	rēgērem, I might rēgērēs, thou mightst rēgērēt, he might rēgērēmūs, we might rēgērētīs, ye might rēgērēnt, they might	rēgītō, thou rēgītō, he rēgītōtē, ye rēguntō, they } must rule.
S. rēgēbam, I was rēgēbās, thou wast rēgēbāt, he was	Pl. rēgēbāmūs, we were rēgēbātīs, ye were rēgēbant, they were	rēgērule, I might rēgērēs, thou mightst rēgērēt, he might rēgērēmūs, we might rēgērētīs, ye might rēgērēnt, they might	rēgētō, thou rēgētō, he rēgētōtē, ye rēguntō, they } must rule.

VERB INFINITE.

Inf. Pres. Imp. řěgěřě, to rule.  
 Inf. Perf. Plup. řěxissě, to have ruled.  
 Inf. Fut. . . . rectūrūs essě, to be about to rule.

Ger. Nom. Ac. řěgendum, ruling.  
 Ger. Gen. . . řěgendī, of ruling.  
 Ger. Dat. Abl. řěgendō, for or by ruling.

Sup. in um . rectum, to rule.  
 Sup. in u . . . rectū, in ruling, or to be ruled.

Part. Pres. . řěgens, ruling.  
 Part. Fut. . . rectūrūs, about to rule.

řěxěrim, I may  
 řěxěřiš, thou mayst  
 řěxěřit, he may  
 řěxěřimūs, we may  
 řěxěřitīs, ye may  
 řěxěrint, they may

have ruled.

řěxissem, I should  
 řěxissēs, thou wouldst  
 řěxissět, he would  
 řěxissēmūs, we should  
 řěxissětīs, ye would  
 řěxissent, they would

have ruled.

S. řěxī, I ruled†  
 řěxistī, thou ruledst  
 řěxīt, he ruled  
 Pl. řěximūs, we ruled  
 řěxistīs, ye ruled [ruled.  
 řěx-ērunt věl řěx-ērě, they

S. řěxěřō, I shall  
 řěxěřiš, thou wilt  
 řěxěřit, he will  
 Pl. řěxěřimūs, we shall  
 řěxěřitīs, ye will  
 řěxěrint, they will

have ruled.

S. řěxěram, I had  
 řěxěraš, thou hadst  
 řěxěraš, he had  
 Pl. řěxěramūs, we had  
 řěxěrašīs, ye had  
 řěxěrant, they had

ruled.

Perfect.

Future Perfect.

Pluperfect.

\* Făcō, dăcō, dŭcō, make Imperative Present Second Person, făc or făcě, dăc, dŭc.  
 † Or, 'I have ruled,' &c.

## VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	<p>S. audīam, I shall audīēs, thou wilt audīēt, he will Pl. audīēmūs, we shall audīētīs, ye will audīent, they will</p> <p style="text-align: right;">} hear.</p>	<p>audīam, I may audīās, thou mayst audīāt, he may audīāmūs, we may audīātīs, ye may audīant, they may</p> <p style="text-align: right;">} hear.</p>	<p>audī, hear thou audītē, hear ye.</p> <p>audītō, thou audītō, he audītōtē, ye audīuntō, they</p> <p style="text-align: right;">} must hear.</p>
Imperfect.	<p>S. audīebam, I was audīebās, thou wast audīebāt, he was Pl. audīebāmūs, we were audīebātīs, ye were audīebant, they were</p> <p style="text-align: right;">} hearing.</p>	<p>audīrem, I might audīrēs, thou mightst audīrēt, he might audīrēmūs, we might audīrētīs, ye might audīrent, they might</p> <p style="text-align: right;">} hear.</p>	

Perfect.	<p>S. <i>audivī, I heard*</i>  <i>audivistī, thou heardest</i>  <i>audivīt, he heard</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>audivimūs, we heard</i>  <i>audivistis, ye heard</i>  <i>audiv-erunt v. audiv-erē,</i>  <i>they heard.</i></p>	<p><i>audivērim, I may</i>  <i>audivēris, thou mayst</i>  <i>audivērit, he may</i>  <i>audivērimūs, we may</i>  <i>audivēritīs, ye may</i>  <i>audivērint, they may</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have heard.</i></p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>VERB INFINITE.</b></p> <p>Inf. Pres. Imp. <i>audirē, to hear.</i>      Inf. Perf. Plup. <i>audivissē, to have heard.</i>      Inf. Fut. . . <i>auditūrūs essē, to be about to hear.</i></p> <p>Ger. Nom. Ac. <i>audiendum, hearing.</i>      Ger. Gen. . . <i>audiendī, of hearing.</i>      Ger. Dat. Abl. <i>audiendō, for or by hearing.</i></p> <p>Sup. in <i>um</i> . . <i>audītum, to hear.</i>      Sup. in <i>u</i> . . <i>audītū, in hearing, or to be heard.</i></p> <p>Part. Pres. . . <i>audiens, hearing.</i>      Part. Fut. . . <i>auditūrūs, about to hear.</i></p>
Future Perfect.	<p>S. <i>audivērō, I shall</i>  <i>audivēris, thou wilt</i>  <i>audivērit, he will</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>audivērimūs, we shall</i>  <i>audivēritīs, ye will</i>  <i>audivērint, they will</i></p>	<p><i>audivissēm, I should</i>  <i>audivissēs, thou wouldst</i>  <i>audivissēt, he would</i>  <i>audivissēmūs, we should</i>  <i>audivissētīs, ye would</i>  <i>audivissent, they would</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have heard.</i></p>	
Pluperfect.	<p>S. <i>audivēram, I had</i>  <i>audivērās, thou hadst</i>  <i>audivērāt, he had</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>audivērāmūs, we had</i>  <i>audivērātīs, ye had</i>  <i>audivērānt, they had</i></p>	<p><i>audivissēm, I should</i>  <i>audivissēs, thou wouldst</i>  <i>audivissēt, he would</i>  <i>audivissēmūs, we should</i>  <i>audivissētīs, ye would</i>  <i>audivissent, they would</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have heard.</i></p>	

\* Or, 'I have heard,' &amp;c.

THE FIRST CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.  
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
<p>S. <i>Amor, I am</i>  <i>ămă-ris vël -rë, thou art</i>  <i>ămătūr, he is</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>ămămūr, we are</i>  <i>ămămīnī, ye are</i>  <i>ămantūr, they are</i></p>	<p><i>ămăr, I may</i>  <i>ămă-ris vël -rë, thou mayst</i>  <i>ămētūr, he may</i>  <i>ămēmūr, we may</i>  <i>ămēmīnī, ye may</i>  <i>ămentūr, they may</i></p>	<p><i>ămărë, be thou</i>  <i>ămămīnī, be ye</i></p>	<p><i>ămătōr, thou</i>  <i>ămătōr, he</i>  <i>ămantōr, they</i></p>
<p>S. <i>ămăbōr, I shall</i>  <i>ămăbē-ris vël -rë, thou</i>  <i>wilt</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>ămăbītūr, he will</i>  <i>ămăcīmūr, we shall</i>  <i>ămăbīmīnī, ye will</i>  <i>ămăbantūr, they will</i></p>	<p><i>ămărë, I might</i>  <i>ămă-ris vël -rë, thou</i>  <i>mightst</i>  <i>ămărētūr, he might</i>  <i>ămărēmūr, we might</i>  <i>ămărēmīnī, ye might</i>  <i>ămărentūr, they might</i></p>	<p><i>ămătōr, thou</i>  <i>ămătōr, he</i>  <i>ămantōr, they</i></p>	<p><i>ămătōr, thou</i>  <i>ămătōr, he</i>  <i>ămantōr, they</i></p>
<p>S. <i>ămăbār, I was</i>  <i>ămăbā-ris vël -rë, thou</i>  <i>wast</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>ămăbātūr, he was</i>  <i>ămăbāmūr, we were</i>  <i>ămăbāmīnī, ye were</i>  <i>ămăbantūr, they were</i></p>	<p><i>ămărë, I might</i>  <i>ămă-ris vël -rë, thou</i>  <i>mightst</i>  <i>ămărētūr, he might</i>  <i>ămărēmūr, we might</i>  <i>ămărēmīnī, ye might</i>  <i>ămărentūr, they might</i></p>	<p><i>ămătōr, thou</i>  <i>ămătōr, he</i>  <i>ămantōr, they</i></p>	<p><i>ămătōr, thou</i>  <i>ămătōr, he</i>  <i>ămantōr, they</i></p>

Perfect.	<p>S. amātūs sum, <i>I was</i>  amātūs es, <i>thou wast</i>  amātūs est, <i>he was</i>  Pl. amātī sumūs, <i>we were</i>  amātī estīs, <i>ye were</i>  amātī sunt, <i>they were</i></p>	<p>amātūs sim, <i>I may</i>  amātūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i>  amātūs sīt, <i>he may</i>  amātī simūs, <i>we may</i>  amātī sītīs, <i>ye may</i>  amātī sint, <i>they may</i></p> <p><i>have been loved.</i></p>	<p style="text-align: center;">VERB INFINITE.</p> <p>Inf. Pres. Imp. amārī, <i>to be loved.*</i>  Inf. Perf. Plup. amātūs essē, <i>to have been loved.</i>  Inf. Fut. . . amātum irī.  Part. Perf. . . amātūs, <i>loved.</i>  Gerundive . . . amandūs, <i>meet to be loved.</i></p>
Future Perfect.	<p>S. amātūs erō, <i>I shall</i>  amātūs erīs, <i>thou wilt</i>  amātūs erit, <i>he will</i>  Pl. amātī erimūs, <i>we shall</i>  amātī eritīs, <i>ye will</i>  amātī erunt, <i>they will</i></p>	<p><i>have been loved.</i></p>	
Pluperfect.	<p>S. amātūs eram, <i>I had</i>  amātūs erās, <i>thou hadst</i>  amātūs erāt, <i>he had</i>  Pl. amātī eramūs, <i>we had</i>  amātī erātīs, <i>ye had</i>  amātī erant, <i>they had</i></p>	<p><i>been loved.</i></p> <p>amātūs essem, <i>I should</i>  amātūs essēs, <i>thou wouldst</i>  amātūs essēt, <i>he would</i>  amātī essēmūs, <i>we should</i>  amātī essētīs, <i>ye would</i>  amātī essent, <i>they would</i></p> <p><i>have been loved.</i></p>	

\* The ancient ending of Infinitive Present Passive was *ier*: as, amārīer; and this form is sometimes used by poets.

THE SECOND CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.  
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
S. Mönëör, <i>I am</i> mönë-ris v. -rë, <i>thou art</i> mönëtür, <i>he is</i> Pl. mönëämür, <i>we are</i> mönëämīnī, <i>ye are</i> mönentür, <i>they are</i>	S. mönëbör, <i>I shall</i> mönëbë-ris v. -rë, <i>thou</i> <i>wilt</i> mönëbütür, <i>he will</i> Pl. mönëbīmür, <i>we shall</i> mönëbīmīnī, <i>ye will</i> mönëbuntür, <i>they will</i>	mönëär, <i>I may</i> mönëä-ris v. -rë, <i>thou mayst</i> mönëätür, <i>he may</i> mönëämür, <i>we may</i> mönëämīnī, <i>ye may</i> mönëäntür, <i>they may</i>	mönërë, <i>be thou</i> mönëmīnī, <i>be ye</i>
Future Simple.	S. mönëtör, <i>thou</i> mönëtör, <i>he</i> mönentör, <i>they</i>	mönër, <i>I might</i> mönërë-ris v. -rë, <i>thou</i> <i>mightst</i> mönëretür, <i>he might</i> mönëremür, <i>we might</i> mönëremīnī, <i>ye might</i> mönërentür, <i>they might</i>	mönëtör, <i>thou</i> mönëtör, <i>he</i> mönentör, <i>they</i>
Imperfect.	S. mönëbär, <i>I was</i> mönëbä-ris v. -rë, <i>thou</i> <i>wast</i> mönëbätür, <i>he was</i> Pl. mönëbämür, <i>we were</i> mönëbämīnī, <i>ye were</i> mönëbantür, <i>they were</i>	mönër, <i>I might</i> mönërë-ris v. -rë, <i>thou</i> <i>mightst</i> mönëretür, <i>he might</i> mönëremür, <i>we might</i> mönëremīnī, <i>ye might</i> mönërentür, <i>they might</i>	mönëtör, <i>thou</i> mönëtör, <i>he</i> mönentör, <i>they</i>



Perfect.	<p>S. mōnītūs sum, <i>I was</i>          mōnītūs es, <i>thou wast</i>          mōnītūs est, <i>he was</i>          Pl. mōnītī sūmūs, <i>we were</i>          mōnītī estīs, <i>ye were</i>          mōnītī sunt, <i>they were</i></p>	<p>mōnītūs sim, <i>I may</i>          mōnītūs sis, <i>thou mayst</i>          mōnītūs sit, <i>he may</i>          mōnītī simūs, <i>we may</i>          mōnītī sītīs, <i>ye may</i>          mōnītī sint, <i>they may</i></p>	<p>VERB INFINITIVE.</p> <p>Inf. Pres. Imp. mōnērī, <i>to be advised.</i>          Inf. Perf. Plup. mōnītūs essē, <i>to have been advised.</i>          Inf. Fut. . . mōnītum irī.          Part. Perf. . mōnītūs, <i>advised.</i>          Gerundive . mōnendūs, <i>meet to be advised.</i></p>
Future Perfect.	<p>S. mōnītūs erō, <i>I shall</i>          mōnītūs erīs, <i>thou wilt</i>          mōnītūs erīt, <i>he will</i>          Pl. mōnītī erīmūs, <i>we shall</i>          mōnītī erītīs, <i>ye will</i>          mōnītī erunt, <i>they will</i></p>	<p>mōnītūs essem, <i>I should</i>          mōnītūs essēs, <i>thou wouldst</i>          mōnītūs essēt, <i>he would</i>          mōnītī essēmūs, <i>we should</i>          mōnītī essētīs, <i>ye would</i>          mōnītī essent, <i>they would</i></p>	
Pluperfect.	<p>S. mōnītūs eram, <i>I had</i>          mōnītūs erās, <i>thou hadst</i>          mōnītūs erāt, <i>he had</i>          Pl. mōnītī erāmūs, <i>we had</i>          mōnītī erātīs, <i>ye had</i>          mōnītī erant, <i>they had</i></p>	<p>advised.</p>	

	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Present Tense.	<p>S. Rëgör, <i>I am</i> rëgë-rîs vël -rë, <i>thou art</i> rëgîtür, <i>he is</i></p> <p>Pl. rëgîmür, <i>we are</i> rëgîmîni, <i>ye are</i> rëgüntür, <i>they are</i></p>	<p>rëgär, <i>I may</i> rëgä-rîs v. -rë, <i>thou mayst</i> rëgätür, <i>he may</i> rëgämür, <i>we may</i> rëgämîni, <i>ye may</i> rëgantür, <i>they may</i></p>	<p>rëgërë, <i>be thou</i> rëgîmîni, <i>be ye</i></p>
Future Simple.	<p>S. rëgär, <i>I shall</i> rëgë-rîs v. -rë, <i>thou wilt</i> rëgëtür, <i>he will</i></p> <p>Pl. rëgëmür, <i>we shall</i> rëgëmîni, <i>ye will</i> rëgentür, <i>they will</i></p>	<p>rëgërë, <i>I might</i> rëgërë-rîs v. -rë, <i>thou mightst</i> rëgëretür, <i>he might</i> rëgëremür, <i>we might</i> rëgëremîni, <i>ye might</i> rëgërentür, <i>they might</i></p>	<p>rëgîtör, <i>thou</i> rëgîtör, <i>he</i> rëgüntör, <i>they</i></p>
Imperfect.	<p>S. rëgëbär, <i>I was</i> rëgëbä-rîs vël -rë, <i>thou</i> wast</p> <p>Pl. rëgëbätür, <i>he was</i> rëgëbämür, <i>we were</i> rëgëbämîni, <i>ye were</i> rëgëbantür, <i>they were</i></p>	<p>rëgërë, <i>I might</i> rëgërë-rîs v. -rë, <i>thou mightst</i> rëgëretür, <i>he might</i> rëgëremür, <i>we might</i> rëgëremîni, <i>ye might</i> rëgërentür, <i>they might</i></p>	<p>rëgîtör, <i>thou</i> rëgîtör, <i>he</i> rëgüntör, <i>they</i></p>

*ruled.*

*must be ruled.*

*be ruled.*

*be ruled.*

*ruled.*

*be ruled.*

*being ruled.*

Perfect.	<p>S. rectūs sum, <i>I was</i>          rectūs es, <i>thou wast</i>          rectūs est, <i>he was</i>          Pl. rectī sūmūs, <i>we were</i>          rectī estīs, <i>ye were</i>          rectī sunt, <i>they were</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} ruled.</p>	<p>rectūs sim, <i>I may</i>          rectūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i>          rectūs sīt, <i>he may</i>          rectī simūs, <i>we may</i>          rectī sitīs, <i>ye may</i>          rectī sint, <i>they may</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} have been ruled.</p>	<p>VERB INFINITE.</p> <p>Inf. Pres. Imp. rēgī, <i>to be ruled.</i>          Inf. Perf. Plup. rectūs essē, <i>to have been ruled.</i>          Inf. Fut. . . . rectum irī.          Part. Perf. . . . rectūs, <i>ruled.</i>          Gerundive . . . rēgendūs, <i>meat to be ruled.</i></p>
Future Perfect.	<p>S. rectūs erō, <i>I shall</i>          rectūs erīs, <i>thou wilt</i>          rectūs erīt, <i>he will</i>          Pl. rectī erimūs, <i>we shall</i>          rectī eritīs, <i>ye will</i>          rectī erunt, <i>they will</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} have been ruled.</p>	<p>rectūs essem, <i>I should</i>          rectūs essēs, <i>thou wouldst</i>          rectūs essēt, <i>he would</i>          rectī essēmūs, <i>we should</i>          rectī essētīs, <i>ye would</i>          rectī essent, <i>they would</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} have been ruled.</p>	
Pluperfect.	<p>S. rectūs eram, <i>I had</i>          rectūs erās, <i>thou hadst</i>          rectūs erāt, <i>he had</i>          Pl. rectī eramūs, <i>we had</i>          rectī erātīs, <i>ye had</i>          rectī erant, <i>they had</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} been ruled.</p>		

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	<p>S. audiör, <i>I am</i> audi-ris vel -rë, <i>thou art</i> audütür, <i>he is</i></p> <p>Pl. audimür, <i>we are</i> audimini, <i>ye are</i> audiuntür, <i>they are</i></p>	<p>audiär, <i>I may</i> audiä-ris v. -rë, <i>thou mayst</i> audiätür, <i>he may</i> audiämür, <i>we may</i> audiämini, <i>ye may</i> audiäntür, <i>they may</i></p>	<p>audi-rë, <i>be thou</i></p> <p>audi-mini, <i>be ye</i></p> <p>audi-tör, <i>thou</i> audi-tör, <i>he</i> audi-untör, <i>they</i></p>
Imperfect.	<p>S. audiëbär, <i>I was</i> audiëbä-ris v. -rë, <i>thou wast</i> audiëbätür, <i>he was</i></p> <p>Pl. audiëbämür, <i>we were</i> audiëbämini, <i>ye were</i> audiëbantür, <i>they were</i></p>	<p>audi-rë, <i>I might</i> audi-ris v. -rë, <i>thou mightst</i> audi-rëtür, <i>he might</i> audi-rëmür, <i>we might</i> audi-rëmini, <i>ye might</i> audi-rëntür, <i>they might</i></p>	<p>audi-tör, <i>thou</i> audi-tör, <i>he</i> audi-untör, <i>they</i></p>

S. audītūs sum, *I was*  
 audītūs ēs, *thou wast*  
 audītūs est, *he was*  
 Pl. audītī sūmūs, *we were*  
 audītī estīs, *ye were*  
 audītī sunt, *they were*

Perfect.

audītūs sim, *I may*  
 audītūs sīs, *thou mayst*  
 audītūs sīt, *he may*  
 audītī simūs, *we may*  
 audītī sītīs, *ye may*  
 audītī sint, *they may*

have been heard.

S. audītūs ěrō, *I shall*  
 audītūs ěrīs, *thou wilt*  
 audītūs ěrīt, *he will*  
 Pl. audītī ěrīmūs, *we shall*  
 audītī ěrītīs, *ye will*  
 audītī ěrunt, *they will*

Future Perfect.

have been heard.

S. audītūs ěram, *I had*  
 audītūs ěrās, *thou hadst*  
 audītūs ěrāt, *he had*  
 Pl. audītī ěrāmūs, *we had*  
 audītī ěrātīs, *ye had*  
 audītī ěrant, *they had*

Pluperfect.

audītūs essem, *I should*  
 audītūs essēs, *thou wouldst*  
 audītūs essēt, *he would*  
 audītī essēmūs, *we should*  
 audītī essētīs, *ye would*  
 audītī essent, *they would*

have been heard.

## VERB INFINITE.

Inf. Pres. Imp. audīrī, *to be heard.*Inf. Perf. Plup. audītūs essē, *to have been heard.*

Inf. Fut. . . . audītum irī.

Part. Perf. . . . audītūs, *heard.*Gerundive . . . audiendūs, *meet to be heard.*

		INDICATIVE MOOD.					
		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Present.	Ām-	ō	ās	āt	āmūs	ātīs	ant
	Mōn-	ēō	ēs	ēt	ēmūs	ētīs	ent
	Rēg-	ō	īs	īt	īmūs	ītīs	unt
	Aud-	īō	īs	īt	īmūs	ītīs	ūnt
Fut. Simple.	Āmā-	} bō	bīs	bīt	bīmūs	bītīs	bunt
	Mōnē-						
	Rēg-	} am	ēs	ēt	ēmūs	ētīs	ent
	Audī-						
Imperfect.	Āmā-	} bam	bās	bāt	bāmūs	bātīs	bant
	Mōnē-						
	Rēg-ē-						
	Audī-ē-						
Perfect.	Āmāv-	} ī	istī	īt	īmūs	istīs	ērunt <i>v.</i> ērē
	Mōnū-						
	Rex-						
	Audīv-						
Fut. Perf.	Āmāv-	} ērō	ērīs	ērīt	ērīmūs	ērītīs	ērunt
	Mōnū-						
	Rex-						
	Audīv-						
Pluperfect.	Āmāv-	} ēram	ērās	ērāt	ērāmūs	ērātīs	ērunt
	Mōnū-						
	Rex-						
	Audīv-						

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Present.		Future.				
		S. 2.	Pl. 2.	S. 2.	S. 3.	Pl. 2.	Pl. 3.	
Ām-	Ā	ātē	~	ātō	ātō	ātōtē	antō	
Mōn-	ē	ētē	~	ētō	ētō	ētōtē	entō	
Rēg-	ē	ītē	~	ītō	ītō	ītōtē	untō	
Aud-	ī	ītē	~	ītō	ītō	ītōtē	ūntō	

*Note.*—When the Perfect-stem ends in *av, ev, ov, v* is often eliminated before *is* or *er* (but not before *ērē*), and contraction always follows: as—

āmāvisti × āmastī implēvissem × implessem nōvistī × nostī

āmāvērunt × āmārunt implēveram × implēram nōveram × nōram

When the Perfect-stem ends in *iv, v* is often eliminated, and contraction may follow before *is* only: as, *audivī × audīī*; *audivistī × audīistī × audīstī*.

Writers sometimes cast out *is* from other Perfect forms: as, *dixī* for *dixistī*, *accessītīs* for *accessistīs*, *surrexē* for *surrexissē*; *ērepsēmūs* for *ērepsissēmūs*.

The sign × means 'changed to.'

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.  
VOICE.

## CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Ām-	em	ēs	ēt	ēmūs	ētīs	ent
Mōn-	eam	eās	ēāt	eāmūs	eātīs	ēant
Rēg-	am	ās	āt	āmūs	ātīs	ant
Aud-	iam	iās	iāt	iāmūs	iātīs	iant

Āmā- Mōnē- Rēgē- Audī-	}	rem	rēs	rēt	rēmūs	rētīs	rent
---------------------------------	---	-----	-----	-----	-------	-------	------

Āmāv- Mōnū- Rex- Audīv-	}	erim	erīs	erit	erimūs	erītīs	erint
----------------------------------	---	------	------	------	--------	--------	-------

Āmāv- Mōnū- Rex- Audīv-	}	issem	issēs	issēt	issēmūs	issētīs	issent
----------------------------------	---	-------	-------	-------	---------	---------	--------

## VERB INFINITIVE.

## INFINITIVE.

## GERUND.

Pres. Imperf.

Perf. Pluperf.

N. Ac.

G. D. Abl.

Āmā- Mōnē- Rēgē- Audī-	}	rē	}	issē
---------------------------------	---	----	---	------

Ām-and- Mōn-end- Rēg-end- Audī-end-	}	um,	ī,	ō
--	---	-----	----	---

## PARTICIPLE Pres. Impf.

## SUPINES.

## PARTICIPLE Future.

Ām- Mōn- Rēg- Audī-	}	ans
ens		

Āmāt- Mōnīt- Rect- Audīt-	}	1.	2.
um,		ū	

ūrūs.

		INDICATIVE MOOD.					
		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Present.	Ăm-	ör	ăris*	ătür	ămür	ăminî	antür
	Mön-	ëör	ëris	ëtür	ëmür	ëminî	entür
	Rëg-	ör	ëris	îtür	îmür	îminî	untür
	Aud-	iör	iris	itür	imür	iminî	iuntür
Fut. Simple.	Ămā-	bör	bëris	bîtür	bîmür	bîminî	buntür
	Mönē-		v. bërë				
Fut. Simple.	Rëg-	ăr	ëris	ëtür	ëmür	ëminî	entür
	Audî-		v. ërë				
Imperfect.	Ămā-	băr	băris	bătür	bămür	băminî	bantür
	Mönē-		v. bārë				
Imperfect.	Rëg-						
	Audî-ē-						
Perfect.	Ămāt-	üş	üş	üş	ī	ī	ī
	Mönît-		sum†	ës	est	sümüs	estis
Perfect.	Rect-						
	Audît-						
Fut. Perf.	Ămāt-	üş	üş	üş	ī	ī	ī
	Mönît-		ërō	ëris	ërit	ërimüs	ëritis
Fut. Perf.	Rect-						
	Audît-						
Pluperfect.	Ămāt-	üş	üş	üş	ī	ī	ī
	Mönît-		ëram	ërās	ërăt	ërämüs	ërätis
Pluperfect.	Rect-						
	Audît-						

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Present.		Future.		
		S. 2.	Pl. 2.	S. 2.	S. 3.	Pl. 3.
Ămā-	}	rë	minî	tör	tör	ntör
				tör	tör	ntör
Rëg-		ërë	îminî	îtör	îtör	untör
Audî-		rë	minî	tör	tör	untör

\* In the Second Pers. Pres. Indic. Passive it is not so usual to write rë for ris, on account of the confusion with Infin. Act. and Imperat. Pass.

† In the periphrases fül is occasionally used for sum, fülerö for ërō, füëram for ëram, füërim for sim, füissem for essem, and füissë for essë : as, âmătüs fül, fülerö, füëram, füërim, füissem, füissë, etc.



FOUR CONJUGATIONS.  
VOICE.

## CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Ăm- Mönē- Rēg- Audī-	}	ēr	ērīs <i>v.</i> ērē	ētūr	ēmūr	ēmīnī	entūr
		ār	ārīs <i>v.</i> arē	ātūr	āmūr	āmīnī	antūr

Ămā- Mönē- Rēgē- Audī-	}	rēr	rērīs <i>v.</i> rērē	rētūr	rēmūr	rēmīnī	rentūr
---------------------------------	---	-----	-------------------------	-------	-------	--------	--------

Ămāt- Mönīt- Rect- Audīt-	}	ūs	ūs	ūs	ī	ī	ī
		sim	sīs	sīt	sīmūs	sītīs	sint

Ămāt- Mönīt- Rect- Audīt-	}	ūs	ūs	ūs	ī	ī	ī
		essem	essēs	essēt	essēmūs	essētīs	essent

## VERB INFINITIVE.

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. Imperf.	Perf. Pluperf.	Future.
ĂmĀ- MönĒ- RĒg- Audī-	Amāt- Mönīt- Rect- Audīt-	Amāt- Mönīt- Rect- Audīt-
rī	} ūs essē	} um irī
ī		
rī		

## PARTICIPLE Perfect.

Ămat- Mönīt- Rect- Audīt-	} ūs
------------------------------------	------

## GERUNDIVE.

Ămand- Mönend- Rēgend- Audīend-	} ūs.
--	-------

§ 61. CONJUGATION OF THE DEPONENT VERB UTOR, I use (THIRD).  
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	<p>S. ūtōr, I use          ūtē-rīs v. -rě, thou usest          ūtūtūr, he uses          Pl. ūtīmūr, we use          ūtīmīnī, ye use          ūtuntūr, they use.</p>	<p>ūtār, I may          ūtā-rīs v. -rě, thou mayst          ūtātūr, he may          ūtāmūr, we may          ūtāmīnī, ye may          ūtantūr, they may</p>	<p>ūtērě, use thou          ūtīmīnī, use ye</p>
Imperfect.	<p>S. ūtēbār, I shall          ūtē-rīs v. -rě, thou wilt          ūtētūr, he will          Pl. ūtēmūr, we shall          ūtēmīnī, ye will          ūtentūr, they will</p>	<p>ūtērě, I might          ūtērē-rīs v. -rě, thou mightst          ūtērētūr, he might          ūtērēmūr, we might          ūtērēmīnī, ye might          ūtērētūr, they might</p>	<p>ūtītōr, thou          ūtītōr, he          ūtuntōr, they</p> <p style="text-align: center;">} must use.</p>

<p>Perfect.</p>	<p>S. ūsūs sum, <i>I used</i>          ūsūs ēs, <i>thou usedst</i>          ūsūs est, <i>he used</i>          Pl. ūsī sūmūs, <i>we used</i>          ūsī estīs, <i>ye used</i>          ūsī sunt, <i>they used.</i></p>	<p>ūsūs sim, <i>I may</i>          ūsūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i>          ūsūs sīt, <i>he may</i>          ūsī sīmūs, <i>we may</i>          ūsī sītīs, <i>ye may</i>          ūsī sint, <i>they may</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have used.</i></p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>VERB INFINITE.</b></p> <p>Inf. Pres. Imp. ūtī, <i>to use.</i>          Inf. Perf. Plup. ūsūs essē, <i>to have used.</i>          Inf. Fut. . . ūsūrūs essē, <i>to be about to use.</i>          Ger. Nom. Ac. ūtendum, <i>using.</i>          Ger. Gen. . . ūtendī, <i>of using.</i>          Ger. Dat. Abl. ūtendō, <i>for or by using.</i></p>
<p>Future Perfect.</p>	<p>S. ūsūs ērō, <i>I shall</i>          ūsūs ērīs, <i>thou wilt</i>          ūsūs ērīt, <i>he will</i>          Pl. ūsī ērīmūs, <i>we shall</i>          ūsī ērītīs, <i>ye will</i>          ūsī ērunt, <i>they will</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have used.</i></p>	<p>ūsūs essem, <i>I should</i>          ūsūs essēs, <i>thou wouldst</i>          ūsūs essēt, <i>he would</i>          ūsī essēmūs, <i>we should</i>          ūsī essētīs, <i>ye would</i>          ūsī essent, <i>they would</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have used.</i></p>	<p>Sup. in <i>um</i> . . ūsum, <i>to use.</i>          Sup. in <i>u</i> . . ūsū, <i>in using, or to be used.</i>          Part. Pres. . . ūtens, <i>using.</i>          Part. Fut. . . ūsūrūs, <i>about to use.</i>          Part. Perf. . . ūsūs, <i>having used.</i>          Gerundive . . ūtendūs, <i>to be used.</i></p>
<p>Pluperfect.</p>	<p>S. ūsūs eram, <i>I had</i>          ūsūs ērās, <i>thou hadst</i>          ūsūs ērāt, <i>he had</i>          Pl. ūsī ērāmūs, <i>we had</i>          ūsī ērātīs, <i>ye had</i>          ūsī ērant, <i>they had</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>used.</i></p>	<p>ūsūs essem, <i>I should</i>          ūsūs essēs, <i>thou wouldst</i>          ūsūs essēt, <i>he would</i>          ūsī essēmūs, <i>we should</i>          ūsī essētīs, <i>ye would</i>          ūsī essent, <i>they would</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have used.</i></p>	<p>Sup. in <i>um</i> . . ūsum, <i>to use.</i>          Sup. in <i>u</i> . . ūsū, <i>in using, or to be used.</i>          Part. Pres. . . ūtens, <i>using.</i>          Part. Fut. . . ūsūrūs, <i>about to use.</i>          Part. Perf. . . ūsūs, <i>having used.</i>          Gerundive . . ūtendūs, <i>to be used.</i></p>

		INDICATIVE MOOD.					
		Singular.			Plural.		
Present.		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
	Vēn-		ōr	ā-rīs (rē)	ātūr	āmūr	āmīnī
Vēr-		ēōr	ē-rīs (rē)	ētūr	ēmūr	ēmīnī	entūr
Ūt-		ōr	ē-rīs (rē)	ītūr	īmūr	īmīnī	untūr
Part-		iōr	ī-rīs (rē)	ītūr	īmūr	īmīnī	iuntūr
Fut. Simple.	Vēnā-	} bōr	bē-rīs (rē)	bitūr	bīmūr	bīmīnī	buntūr
	Vērē-						
Ūt-	} ār	ē-rīs (rē)	ētūr	ēmūr	ēmīnī	entūr	
Partī-							
Imperfect.	Vēnā-	} bār	bāris v.	bātūr	bāmūr	bāmīnī	bantūr
	Vērē-						
Ūt-ē-	} bār	bāris v.	bātūr	bāmūr	bāmīnī	bantūr	
Partī-ē-							
Perfect.	Vēnāt-	} ūs	ūs	ūt	ī	ī	ī
	Vērīt-						
Ūs-	} sum	ēs	est	sūmūs	estīs	sunt	
Partīt-							
Fut. Perf.	Vēnāt-	} ūs	ūs	ūt	ī	ī	ī
	Vērīt-						
Ūs-	} ērō	ērīs	ērīt	ērīmūs	ērītīs	ērunt	
Partīt-							
Pluperfect.	Vēnāt-	} ūs	ūs	ūt	ī	ī	ī
	Vērīt-						
Ūs-	} eram	ērās	ērāt	ērāmūs	ērātīs	erant	
Partīt-							

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Present.		Future.		
		S. 2.	Pl. 2.	S. 2.	S. 3.	Pl. 3.
Vēnā-	} rē	mīnī	tōr	tōr	tōr	ntōr
Vērē-						
Ūt-	} ērē	ī-mīnī	ītōr	ītōr	untōr	untōr
Partī-						
	} rē	mīnī	tōr	tōr	tōr	untōr

*Note.* Some Deponents have an Active form also; as, pūnīōr and pūnīō, *punish*. Many Participles Perfect of Deponent Verbs are used Passively as well as Actively; such are, auspīcātūs, ābōmīnātūs, ādeptūs, cōmītātūs, commentūs, confessūs, dētestātūs, dignātūs, exsēcātūs, expertūs, ēmensūs, fūrātūs, fābrīcātūs, frustrātūs, Imītātūs, mēdlītātūs, mentītūs, mēdlīcātūs, mērītūs, mōdērātūs, oblitūs, ōpinātūs, pactūs, partītūs, pollīcītūs, pōpūlātūs, praedātūs, prēcātūs, prōfessūs, sōlītūs, testātūs, testīfīcātūs, vēnērātūs, etc.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.  
VERBS.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Vēn-	ēr	ē-rīs (rē)	ētūr	ēmūr	ēmīnī	entūr
Vēr-	ēār	ēā-rīs (rē)	ēātūr	ēāmūr	ēāmīnī	ēantūr
Ūt-	ār	ā-rīs (rē)	ātūr	āmūr	āmīnī	antūr
Part-	īār	īā-rīs (rē)	īātūr	īāmūr	īāmīnī	īantūr

Vēnā- Vērē- Ūt-ē- Partī-	} rēr	rērīs v.	rētūr	rēmūr	rēmīnī	rentūr
		rērē				

Vēnāt- Vērīt- Ūs- Partīt-	} ūs	ūš	ūš	ī	ī	ī	
		sim	sīs	sīt	sīmūs	sītīs	sint

Vēnāt- Vērīt- Ūs- Partīt-	} ūs	ūš	ūš	ūš	ī	ī	ī
		essem	essēs	essēt	essēmūs	essētīs	essent

VERB INFINITIVE.

INFIN. Pres. Imperf.	INFIN. Perf. Plup.	PART. Fut.	INFIN. Fut.
VēnĀ- VērĒ- Ūt- Partī-	} Vēnāt- Vērīt- Ūs- Partīt- ūš essē	} ūrūs	} ūrūs essē
rī			
ī			
rī			

PART. Pres.	GERUND.	GERUNDIVE.	PART. Perf.	SUPINES.
Vēnans Vērēns Ūtēns Partiēns	} Vēnand- Vērēnd- Ūtēnd- Partiēnd- um, ī, ō	} ūš	} Vēnāt- Vērīt- Ūs- Partīt- ūš	} um, ū.

§ 63. *A.* Verbs in *ī-ō* of the Third Conjugation, in their Present-stem forms, retain this *ī* generally ; but not before *i*, final *e*, and short *ēr*. These Verbs are:—

Căp<sup>z</sup>ō, cūp<sup>z</sup>ō, and făc<sup>z</sup>ō,  
 Fōd<sup>z</sup>ō, fūg<sup>z</sup>ō, and jăc<sup>z</sup>ō,  
 Păř<sup>z</sup>ō, răp<sup>z</sup>ō, săp<sup>z</sup>ō, quăt<sup>z</sup>ō,  
 Compounds of spēc<sup>z</sup>ō and lăc<sup>z</sup>ō.  
 Deponent : grăd<sup>z</sup>ōr, păt<sup>z</sup>ōr, mōř<sup>z</sup>ōr ;  
 And, in some tenses, pōt<sup>z</sup>ōr, ōř<sup>z</sup>ōr.

## EXAMPLES.

## ACTIVE.

Indic. Pres. căp<sup>z</sup>-ō, căp<sup>z</sup>-is, -it, -imūs, -itīs, căp<sup>z</sup>-unt.  
 Fut. căp<sup>z</sup>-am, -ēs, -ēt, -ēmūs, -ētīs, -ent.  
 Imperf. căp<sup>z</sup>-ēbam, -ēbās, -ēbăt, -ēbāmūs, -ēbătīs, -ēbant.  
 Conj. Pres. căp<sup>z</sup>-am, -ās, -ăt, -āmus, -ătīs, -ant.  
 Imperf. căp<sup>z</sup>-ērem, -ērēs, -ērēt, -ērēmūs, -ērētīs, -ērent.  
 Imper. Pres. căp<sup>z</sup>-ē, -itē.  
 Fut. căp<sup>z</sup>-itō, -itōtē, căp<sup>z</sup>-untō.  
 Infin. Pres. căp<sup>z</sup>-ērē. Gerund, căp<sup>z</sup>-endum, -endī, -endō.

## DEPONENT.

Indic. Pres. păt<sup>z</sup>-ōr, păt<sup>z</sup>-ērīs, -itūr, -imūr, -imīnī, păt<sup>z</sup>-untūr.  
 Fut. păt<sup>z</sup>-ār, -ērīs, -ētūr, -ēmūr, -ēmīnī, -entūr.  
 Imperf. păt<sup>z</sup>-ēbār, -ēbārīs, -ēbătūr, -ēbāmūr, -ēbāmīnī, -ēbantūr.  
 Conj. Pres. păt<sup>z</sup>-ār, -ārīs, -ătūr, -āmūr, -āmīnī, -antūr.  
 Imperf. păt<sup>z</sup>-ērēr, -ērērīs, -ērētūr, -ērēmūr, -ērēmīnī, -ērentūr.  
 Imper. Pres. păt<sup>z</sup>-ērē, -imīnī.  
 Fut. păt<sup>z</sup>-itōr, păt<sup>z</sup>-untōr.  
 Infin. Pres. păt<sup>z</sup>-ī. Gerund, păt<sup>z</sup>-endūm, -endī, -endō. Gerundive, păt<sup>z</sup>-endūs.

Note 1. Ōř<sup>z</sup>ōr is conjugated like păt<sup>z</sup>ōr, except a few forms which follow the Fourth Conjugation : ōř<sup>z</sup>īrī, ōř<sup>z</sup>īrēr, etc. Pōt<sup>z</sup>ōr follows the Fourth Conjugation, but in some forms wavers between the Third and Fourth : as, pōt<sup>z</sup>ītūr or pōtītūr ; pōt<sup>z</sup>īmūr or pōtīmūr ; pōt<sup>z</sup>ērēr or pōtērēr.

Note 2. Mōř<sup>z</sup>ōr, ōř<sup>z</sup>ōr, have Future Participles mōř<sup>z</sup>ītūrūs, ōř<sup>z</sup>ītūrūs.

*B.* Verbs in *ūō* retain *u* in all forms ; as, ind<sup>z</sup>ūō, ind<sup>z</sup>ūs, ind<sup>z</sup>ū, ind<sup>z</sup>ūrē.

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

§ 64. The Participles in *ūrūs*, *dūs*, may be conjugated with all the Tenses of the Verb *sum*. These forms are called Conj<sup>z</sup>gātīō Pērīphras<sup>z</sup>tīcă Fūtūrī and Cōnj<sup>z</sup>gātīō Pērīphras<sup>z</sup>tīcă Gērundīvī : as,

		SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
		C. P. F.		C. P. F.	
		C. P. G.		C. P. G.	
Pres.	sum	sim	sūm	sim	sūm
S. Fut.	erō	eris	erim	erunt	erunt
Imp.	eram	erās	erāmus	erant	erant
Perf.	fū-i	-isti	fū-imus	-erunt	-erunt
Fut. P.	fū-erō	-eris	fū-erimus	-erint	-erint
Plupf.	fū-eram	-erās	fū-erāmus	-erant	-erant
		Indic. M.		Indic. M.	
		Conj. M.		Conj. M.	
		Infn. Pres. esse		Conj. M.	
		" Perf. fuissē.			
				Conj. M.	
				Conj. M.	
				Conj. M.	
				Conj. M.	

In translating, it is only required to construe each part of the Verb sum, as given in the Table, § 50, with each Participle: as, *amaturus sum*, *I am about to love*; *amandus sum*, *I am meet to be loved* (or, *I am to be loved*). So also *futurus sum*, *I am about to be*; *futurus sim*, *eram*, *essem*, &c.

## SIGNS OF THE TENSES AND MOODS.

§ 65. The Latin Tenses may be variously rendered: as,

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. *āmō, love, am loving.*

Imp. *āmābam, loved, was loving, used to love.*

Perf. *āmāvī, loved (Simple Past), have loved (Present Past).*

§ 66. The Conjunctive Mood has two general uses:

(1) Pure, or not subordinate to another Verb:

(2) Subjunctive, or subordinate to another Verb.

1. The Pure Conjunctive is rendered in English with auxiliary Verbs for Signs; generally *would* or *should*; sometimes *can, could*; *may, might*; *shall, or will*: as,

*āmem tē (sī bōnūs sīs),  
I can love you (if you are good).*

*āmārem tē (sī bōnūs essēs),  
I should—would—love you (if you were good), or  
I should have been loving you (if you were good).*

*āmāvissem tē (sī bōnūs fūissēs or essēs),  
I should—would—have loved you (had you been good).*

2. When the Mood is Subjunctive, it sometimes has a sign in English: as, *Ēdē ūt vīvās, eat that you may live*; but oftener it must be rendered as if it were Indicative: as *sīs, essēs, fūissēs*, in the last Examples. So:

*Laudātūr quōd pārūrīt, he is praised in that he obeyed.*

*Laudāvī eum quī pārūissēt, I praised him (as one) who had obeyed.*

§ 67. The Present Conjunctive is also used Imperatively:

Active.	
Āmem, <i>may I, or let me</i>	}
Āmēs, <i>mayst thou, or see</i>	
<i>thou</i>	
Āmēt, <i>may he, or let him</i>	
Āmēmūs, <i>may we, or let us</i>	
Āmētīs, <i>may ye, or see ye</i>	
Ament, <i>may they, or let them</i>	

Passive.	
Āmēr, <i>may I, or let me</i>	}
Āmērīs, <i>mayst thou, or see</i>	
<i>thou</i>	
Āmētūr, <i>may he, or let him</i>	
Āmēmūr, <i>may we, or let us</i>	
Āmēmīnī, <i>may ye, or see ye</i>	
Amentūr, <i>may they, or let them</i>	

*be loved.*



## THE INFINITIVES.

§ 68. The Infinitives in *rě, rī*, are Present or Imperfect ; Infinitives in *issě, tūs-essě*, Perfect or Pluperfect : as,

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (1) Dīcītūr āmārě,<br><i>He is said to be loving.</i>                                      | (1) Dīcītūr āmārī,<br><i>He is said to be loved.</i>                                     |
| Dīcēbatūr āmārě,<br><i>He was said to have been loving.</i>                                | Dīcēbātūr āmārī,<br><i>He was said to have been (at the time) loved.</i>                 |
| Sciō ěum āmārě,<br><i>I know (that) he is loving.</i>                                      | Sciō ěum āmārī,<br><i>I know (that) he is loved.</i>                                     |
| Sciēbam ěum āmārě,<br><i>I knew (that) he was loving.</i>                                  | Sciēbam ěum āmārī,<br><i>I knew (that) he was loved.</i>                                 |
| (2) Dīcītūr āmāvissě,<br><i>He is said to have loved.</i>                                  | (2) Dīcītūr āmātūs essě,<br><i>He is said to have been loved.</i>                        |
| Dīcēbātūr āmāvissě,<br><i>He was said to have loved.</i>                                   | Dīcēbātūr āmātūs essě,<br><i>He was said to have been (at a former time) loved.</i>      |
| Sciō ěum āmāvissě,<br><i>I know (that) he loved.</i><br><i>I know (that) he has loved.</i> | Sciō ěum āmātum essě,<br><i>I know he was loved.</i><br><i>I know he has been loved.</i> |
| Sciēbam ěum āmāvissě,<br><i>I knew (that) he had loved.</i>                                | Sciēbam ěum āmātum essě,<br><i>I knew he had been loved.</i>                             |

§ 69. A. The Future Infinitive Active has two forms, *-ūrūs essě, -ūrūs fūissě*, the uses of which a few instances will show :—

- (a) Crēdērīs ětūrūs essě, *you are believed to be about to go.*  
Crēdō tē ětūrūm essě, *I believe (that) you will go.*
- (b) Crēdēbārīs ětūrūs essě, *you were believed to be about to go.*  
Crēdēbam tē ětūrūm essě, *I believed that you would go.*
- (c) Crēdērīs ětūrūs fūissě, *you are believed to have been about to go.*  
Crēdō tē ětūrūm fūissě, *I believe that you would have gone.*

*B* The Future Infinitive Passive is formed by the union of the Supine in *um* with the Impersonal Infinitive *irī*: *as*,

*Crēdō āmātūm irī Jūliam*, (lit.) *I believe there-is-a-tending to love Julia*; i.e., *I believe Julia will be loved*.

*Aiunt ultum irī injūriās*, *they say that the wrongs will be avenged*.

*a*. The same may be expressed by *fūtūrum essē ūt*, *fōrē ūt*, with *āmētūr*, *āmārētūr*; *as*,

*Crēdō fūtūrum-essē (or fōrē) ūt Jūliā āmētūr*, *I believe (that) Julia will be loved*.

*Crēdebam fōrē ūt Jūliā āmārētūr*, *I believed (that) Julia would be loved*.

### GERUND.—SUPINES.—PARTICIPLES.

§ 70. *A*. The Gerund is perhaps the Neuter Gerundive Participle declined as a Verb-Noun (*um*, *ī*, *ō*).

*B*. The Supines are Cases (Accusative and Ablative) of a Verb-Noun of the Fourth Declension.

*C*. The Gerundive (*ūs*, *ā*, *um*, like *bōnūs*) is used to express meetness or necessity, either impersonally, *as*, *ēundum est*, *one must go*; or personally, *as*, *vītā tūendā est*, *life should be protected*. If a Case of the Person is added, that Case is usually the Dative: *as*, *ēundum est mihi*, *I must go*; *vītā nōbīs tūendā est*, *life should be protected by us*.

*D* The other Participles are—

Active. Pres. *āmans*, *loving*, like *ingens*.

Fut. *āmātūrūs*, *about to love*, } like *bōnūs*.

Passive. Perf. *āmātūs*, *loved*,

The three Participles wanting may be thus supplied:

Act. Part. Perf. ‘*having loved*,’ *quum āmāvissēt* (or by § 125.)

Pass. Part. Pres. ‘*being loved*,’ *quī āmātūr*, or *dum āmātūr*.

„ Part. Fut. ‘*about to be loved*,’ *quī āmābitūr*.

*E*. Some Verbs form Participials in *bundūs* or *cundūs*, expressing ‘fulness,’ *as*, *vāgābundūs*, *wandering*, *irācundūs*, *wrathful*; in *bīlīs*, expressing ‘possibility,’ *as*, *pārābīlīs*, *procurable*; in *īlīs*, expressing ‘capacity,’ *as*, *dōcīlīs*, *teachable*; in *ax*, expressing ‘inclination,’ *as*, *lōquax*, *talkative*; in *īdūs*, expressing ‘active force,’ *as*, *rāpīdūs*, *hurrying*, *cūpīdūs*, *desirous*.

## DERIVED VERBS.

§ 71. I. Frequentative Verbs express repeated or intenser action, are of the First Conjugation, and formed either in *-tō, -sō*, from Supine-stems: as, *cantō, I sing* (cānō, cantum), *cursō, I run* (currō, cursum); or by adding *-ī-tō, -ī-tōr* to the Clipt Stem, as, *rōgītō, I ask often* (rōgō).

II. Inceptive Verbs express beginning of action, are of the Third Conjugation, and formed by adding *-scō* to the Present-stem: as,

Lābascō,	<i>I begin to totter,</i>	from lābārě.
Pallescō,	<i>I turn pale,</i>	„ pallērě.

Or from Nouns, with suffix *-a-scō* or *-e-scō*; as,

Pūřascō,	<i>I become a boy,</i>	from pūř.
Mītescō,	<i>I become mild,</i>	„ mītīs.

III. Desiderative Verbs express desire of action, are of the Fourth Conjugation, and formed by adding *-ūrīō* to the Supine-stem: as,

Ēsūrīō,	<i>I am hungry,</i>	from ědō, ěs-um.
Partūrīō,	<i>I am in labour,</i>	„ pāřīō, part-um.

## QUASI-PASSIVE AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 72. The Verbs which unite an Active form with a Passive meaning are:

Ēxūlō, <i>I am banished</i> (ārě).	Vāpūlō <sup>š</sup> , <i>I am beaten</i> (ārě).
Fīō, <i>I am made.</i>	Vēněō <sup>š</sup> , <i>I am on sale</i> (irě).
Licěō, <i>I am put to auction.</i>	

§ 73. The Verbs which have an Active Present with a Perfect of Passive form, are:

Auděō, <i>I dare,</i>	Perf. ausūs sum, <i>I dared.</i>
Fīdō, <i>I trust,</i>	„ fīsūs sum, <i>I trusted.</i>
Gauděō, <i>I am glad,</i>	„ gāvīsūs sum, <i>I was glad.</i>
Sōlēō, <i>I am wont,</i>	„ sōlītūs sum, <i>I was wont.</i>

Some have Active Perfect with Deponent Perfect Participles: as,

Present.	Perfect.	Part. Perf.
Jūrō, <i>I swear</i>	jūrāvī, <i>I swore</i>	jūrātūs, <i>having sworn.</i>
Cēnō, <i>I sup</i>	cēnāvī, <i>I supped</i>	cēnātūs, <i>having supped.</i>
Pranděō, <i>I dine</i>	prandī, <i>I dined</i>	pransūs, <i>having dined.</i>

So nuptā, *wedded*, pōtūs, *having drunk*, and some others.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs want some of the usual parts of a Verb.

§ 74. I. The Verbs *coepī*, *I have begun*, *ōdī*, *I hate*, *mēmīnī*, *I remember*, have no Present-stem Tenses.

## SCHEME.

	Indic.	Conj.	Infin.	
Coep-	} <i>ī</i> <i>ērō</i> <i>eram</i>	<i>ērim</i>	<i>issē</i>	Perf.
Ōd-		. . .	. . .	Fut. Perf.
Mēmīn-		<i>issem</i>	<i>issē</i>	Plup.

*Mēmīnī* has Imperative Fut. Sing. *mēmentō* ; Plur. *mēmentōtē*.

*Coepī* has Part. Perf. *coeptūs* ; Fut. *coeptūrūs*.

*Ōdī* „ „ *ōsūs* „ *ōsūrūs*.

*a. Nōvī*, *I know* (from *noscō*), is similarly used.

II. Many Verbs have Perfect without Supine (see Table), and many Inceptive and other Verbs have neither Perfect nor Supine : as, *mītescō*, *pollēō*, *fūrō*, *fērīō*.

III. Verbs Defective in other forms :

(1) *Aiō*, *I say 'ay,' affirm.*

Indic. Pres.	<i>aiō</i> ,	<i>āis</i> ,	<i>āit</i>	—	—	<i>aiunt.</i>
„ Imperf.	<i>aiēbam</i> , <i>-bās</i> , &c., complete.					
Conj. Pres.	—	<i>aiās</i> ,	<i>aiāt</i>	—	—	<i>aiant.</i>

(2) *Inquam*, *I say.*

Indic. Pres.	<i>inquam</i> ,	<i>inquīs</i> ,	<i>inquīt</i> ,	<i>inquimūs</i>	—	<i>inquīunt.</i>
„ Imperf.	—	—	<i>inquīēbāt</i>	—	—	<i>inquīēbant.</i>
„ S. Fut.	—	<i>inquīēs</i> ,	<i>inquīēt.</i>			
„ Perf.	—	<i>inquīstī</i> ,	<i>inquīt.</i>			
Imper. Pres.		<i>inquē</i>	—	—		<i>inquītē.</i>

(3) *Quaesō*, *I entreat* ; 1st Pers. Pl. *quaesūmūs*.

(4) *Fārī*, *to speak* ; used by the Poets in this and a few other forms : as, *fātūr*, *he speaks* ; *fābōr*, *I shall speak* ; *fārē*, *speak thou*. Participles : *fātūs* ; *fandūs*. Gerund : *fandī*, *fandō*.

(5) The Imperatives :

*a. Apāgē*, *begone.*

*Cēdō*, *cēdītē* (or *cettē*), *give here.*

*Hāvē* (or *āvē*), *hāvētē*, *hail.* Infin. *hāvērē.*

*Salvē*, *salvētē*, *hail.* Infin. *salvērē.* Fut. *salvēbīs.*

*b. Āgē*, *āgītē*, *come* ; *Vālē*, *vālētē*, *farewell* ; Infin. *vālērē* ; are used with special meaning, but their Verbs *āgō*, *vālēō*, are fully conjugated.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 75. Impersonal Verbs are conjugated (as such) only in the Third Persons Singular of the Finite Verb, and in the Infinitive.

A. Active Impersonals have no Passive Voice.

(1) The principal of these are of the Second Conjugation :

Ůportět, děcět, dēděcět,	<i>it behoves, beseems, misbecseems,</i>
Pīgět, pūdět, paenītět,	<i>it irks, shames, repents,</i>
Taedět add and mīsērět,	<i>it disgusts, moves pity,</i>
Lībět, līcět, and liquět,	<i>it pleases, is lawful, is clear,</i>
Attīnět and pertīnět.	<i>it relates, belongs.</i>

Conjugation of Impersonal Verbs (Second).

		Indic.	Conjunc.	Infm.						
mē, tē, ěum, nōs, vōs, ěōs	{ 1. Ůport- 2. Dēc- 3. Dēděc- 4. Pīg- 5. Pūd- 6. Paenīt- 7. Taed- 8. Mīsēr-	{ ět ēbīt. ēbāt ůīt ůērīt. ůērāt	{ ěāt  ērět. ůērīt  ůissět.	{ ěrě.   ůissě.    ůissět.	Pres.					
					S. Fut.					
					Imperf.					
					Perf.					
					Fut. Perf.					
					Pluperf.					
					mīhī, etc.	{ 9. Līb- 10. Līc-	{ ůērāt  ůissět.	{	{	
ād mē, etc.	{ 11. Attīn- 12. Pertīn-	{	{	{						

The Persons are expressed by the Case: as,

Sing.	Ůportět mē ěrě,	<i>it behoves me</i>	} to go,	} or I	} ought to go.
	Ůportět tē ěrě,	„ „ you			
	Ůportět ěum ěrě,	„ „ him			
Plur.	Ůportět nōs ěrě,	„ „ us			
	Ůportět vōs ěrě,	„ „ you			
	Ůportět ěōs ěrě,	„ „ them			

Sing.	Līcět mīhī ěrě,	<i>it is allowed me</i>	} to go,	} or I	} may go.
	līcět tībī ěrě,	„ „ you			
	līcět ěī ěrě,	„ „ him			
Plur.	līcět nōbīs ěrě,	„ „ us			
	līcět vōbīs ěrě,	„ „ you			
	līcět ěīs ěrě,	„ „ them			

So in the other Tenses and Moods.

(2) Among Impersonal Verbs of other Conjugations are :

Accidit, <i>it happens</i>	} mīhī, } tībī, } ěī, etc.	Dēlectāt, <i>it charms</i>	} mē, tē, } ěum, etc. } mēā, tūā, } ějūs, etc.
Contingit, <i>it befalls</i>		Jŭvāt, <i>it delights</i>	
Ěvĕnit, <i>it turns out</i>		Intĕrest, <i>it concerns</i>	
Convĕnit, <i>it suits</i>		Rĕfert, <i>it imports</i>	
Expĕdit, <i>it is expedient</i>		Constāt, <i>it is acknowledged.</i>	

(3) Some Impersonals express *changes of season and weather* : as,

Fulgŭrāt, <i>it lightens.</i>	Tōnāt, <i>it thunders.</i>
Ningit, <i>it snows.</i>	Lŭcescīt, <i>it dawns.</i>
Plŭit, <i>it rains.</i>	Vespĕrascīt, <i>it gets late.</i>

§ 76. B. (1) Intransitive Verbs are used impersonally in the Passive Voice : as, lŭditŭr, *there is playing*, from lŭdō, *I play*.

	Indicative.	Conjunctive.	Infinitive.
Present	Lŭditŭr	lŭdātŭr	lŭdī.
Simple Fut.	lŭdētŭr		lŭsum ĭrī.
Imperf.	lŭdĕbātŭr	lŭdĕrĕtŭr.	
Perfect	lŭsum est	lŭsum sīt	lŭsum essĕ.
Fut. Perf.	lŭsum ěrīt		
Pluperf.	lŭsum ěrāt	lŭsum essĕt	lŭsum fŭissĕ.

The Persons may be expressed by an Ablative of the Agent : as,

Present Indicative.			
Sing.	Lŭditŭr ā mē, <i>there is playing by me,</i>	or	<i>I play,</i>
	lŭditŭr ā tē, <i>thee,</i>		<i>thou playest,</i>
	lŭditŭr āb ěō, <i>him,</i>		<i>he plays,</i>
Plur.	lŭditŭr ā nōbīs, <i>us,</i>		<i>we play,</i>
	lŭditŭr ā vōbīs <i>you,</i>		<i>ye play,</i>
	lŭditŭr āb ĭīs, <i>them,</i>		<i>they play.</i>

But the Ablative is often omitted, being understood from the context

§ 77. (2) The Neuter Gerundive is used impersonally with *essĕ* to express meetness or necessity : sometimes with Dative of Person.

Present Indicative.			
Sing.	Lŭdendum est mīhī, <i>there must be playing by me,</i>	or	<i>I</i>
	lŭdendum est tībī, <i>thee,</i>		<i>thou</i>
	lŭdendum est ěī, <i>him,</i>		<i>he</i>
Plur.	lŭdendum est nōbīs, <i>us,</i>		<i>we</i>
	lŭdendum est vōbīs <i>you,</i>		<i>ye</i>
	lŭdendum est ĭīs, <i>them,</i>		<i>they</i>

} *must play.*

Here too the Case is often omitted : nunc est bībendum, *now we (or men) must drink.*

## ANOMALOUS VERBS.

§ 78. Anomalous Verbs do not form all their parts according to rule. Sometimes their Tenses are *borrowed* from several stems, as in *sum*, *possum*, *fērō*; sometimes their irregularities arise from mutation of *letters*, as in *vōlō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *ěō*, *quěō*, *ědō*.

## § 79. CONJUGATION-FORM OF ANOMALOUS VERBS.

	1. <i>Be able.</i>	2. <i>Wish.</i>	3. <i>Not-wish.</i>	4. <i>Wish-rather.</i>
1 Pers. Pres.	Possum	Vōlō	Nōlō	Mālō
2 Pers. „	pōtēs	vīs	nonvīs	māvīs
Infin. „	possē	vellē	nollē	mallē
Perfect	pōtū-ī	vōlū-ī	nōlū-ī	mālū-ī
Ger. in <i>dum</i>	—	(vōlend-um)	(nōlend-um)	(mālend-um)
„ <i>dī</i>	—	vōlend-ī	nōlend-ī	mālend-ī
„ <i>dō</i>	—	vōlend-ō	nōlend-ō	mālend-ō
Part. Pres.	—	vōlens	nōlens	mālens

Pōtens, *able, powerful*, is used as an Adjective.

	5. <i>Bear.</i>	6. <i>Be made.</i>	7. <i>Go.</i>	8. <i>Can.</i>
1 Pers. Pres.	Fērō	Fīō	Ěō	Quěō
2 Pers. „	fers	fīs	īs	quis
Infin. „	ferrē	fīērī	īrē	quirē
Perfect	tūlī	factūs sum	īvī	quivī
Ger. in <i>dum</i>	fērend-um	—	ěund-um	
„ <i>dī</i>	fērend-ī	—	ěund-ī	
„ <i>dō</i>	fērend-ō	—	ěund-ō	
Supine in <i>um</i>	lāt-um	—	īt-um	
„ <i>ū</i>	lāt-ū	—	īt-ū	
Part. Pres.	fēr-ens	—	īens (ěunt-īs)	
„ Fut.	lāt-ūrūs	—	īt-ūrūs	

5. Fērōr (Passive) has Pres. Ind. 2. ferrīs (for fēr-ērīs); 3. fertūr; Imperf. Conj. fēr-r-ēr (for fēr-ērēr), ferrērīs, etc., and Inf. ferrī. Other Present-stem forms are regular. Supine-stem forms, lātūs sum, etc.

6. Fīō in the Present-stem forms is the Passive of fācō, which is regular in the Active, and in the Supine-stem forms of the Passive.

8. Quěo and its compound něquěō (*cannot*) form their tenses like ěō.

9. Ědō, *I eat*, often changes some of its forms as follows:

Pres. 2nd Pers.	3rd Pers.	Infin.	Imperf. Conj.
ědīs or ēs	ědīt or est	ědērē or essē	ědērem or essem.

Pres. Conj. ědim, ědīs, ědīt, is used. Other forms are regular.

		INDICATIVE MOOD.					
		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Present Tense.	Possum		pōtēs	pōtest	possūmūs	pōtestīs	pōssunt
	Vōlō		vīs	vult	vōlūmūs	vultīs	vōlunt
	Nōlō		nonvīs	nonvult	nōlūmūs	nonvultīs	nōlunt
	Mālo		māvīs	māvult	mālūmūs	māvultīs	mālunt
	Fērō		fers	fert	fērīmūs	fertīs	fēruut
	Fiō		fīs	fīt	—	—	fīunt
	Eō		īs	īt	īmūs	ītīs	ēunt
Future Simple.	Pōt-	ērō	ērīs	ērīt	ērīmūs	ērītīs	ērunt
	Vōl-	} am	ēs	ō	ēmūs	ētīs	ent
	Nōl-						
	Māl-						
Fēr-	} bō	bīs	bīt	bīmūs	bītīs	bunt	
Fī-							
I-							
Imperfect.	Pōt-	eram	erās	erāt	erāmūs	erātīs	erant
	Vōl-	} bam	bās	bāt	bāmūs	bātīs	bant
	Nōl-						
	Māl-						
	Fēr-						
Fī-							
I-							
Perfect.	Pōtū-	} ī	istī	īt	īmūs	istīs	ērunt or ērē
	Vōlū-						
Nōlū-							
Mālū-							
Tūl-							
—							
Iv-							
Future Perfect.	Pōtū-	} erō	erīs	erīt	erīmūs	erītīs	erint
	Vōlū-						
	Nōlū-						
	Mālū-						
	Tūl-						
—							
Iv-							
Pluperfect.	Pōtū-	} eram	erās	erāt	erāmūs	erātīs	erant
	Vōlū-						
	Nōlū-						
	Mālū-						
	Tūl-						
—							
Iv-							



## ANOMALOUS VERRS.

		CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Present Tense.	Poss- Väl- Nöl- Mäl- Fër- Fī- Ē-	} im	} īs	} ĭt	} ĩmūs	} ĩtīs	} int
	Fēr- Fī- Ē-						
Imperf. Tense.	Poss- Vell- Noll- Mall- Ferr- Fĭer- Īr-	} em	} ēs	} ět	} ěmūs	} ětīs	} ent
	Pöť- Völ- Nöl- Mäl- Tül- — Īv-						
Perf. Tense.	Pöť- Völ- Nöl- Mäl- Tül- — Īv-	} issem	} issēs	} issĕt	} issēmūs	} issĕtīs	} issent
	Pluperf. Tense.						

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Singular.	Plural.
(3) Nōlī	nōlĭtĕ
(5) Fĕr	fĕrtĕ
(6) Fī	fĭtĕ
(7) Ī	ĭtĕ

## Future.

2.	3.	2.	3.
(3) Nōlĭtō	nōlĭtō	nōlĭtōtĕ	nōluntō
(5) Fĕrtō	fĕrtō	fĕrtōtĕ	fĕruntō
(7) Ītō	ĭtō	ĭtĕtĕ	ĕuntō

(For the Parts of VERB INFINITIVE, see Form of Conjugation, § 79.)

§ 81. TABLE OF VERBS, SHOWING PRESENT, INFINITIVE, PERFECT, AND SUPINE. (See § 48, Note 2.)

I. FIRST CONJUGATION (Character **A**: ĀmĀ-rĕ).

Usual Form :	Present. (ā-o) -ō	Infin. -āre	Perfect. ā-vi	Supine. ā-tum
	Ām-ō	-āre	āmā-vi	āmā-tum.

Exceptions.

-ūi, -itum.

	Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
(1) 1. Crĕpō	-āre	crĕpūi	crĕpĭtum		<i>creak.</i>
2. Cūbō	-āre	cūbūi	cūbĭtum		<i>lie down.</i>
3. Dōmō	-āre	dōmūi	dōmĭtum		<i>tame.</i>
4. Mīcō	-āre	mīcūi	—		<i>glitter.</i>
5. Plicō	-āre	-plicūi	-plicĭtum		<i>fold.</i>
6. Sōnō	-āre	sōnūi	sōnĭtum		<i>sound.</i>
7. Tōnō	-āre	tōnūi	tōnĭtum		<i>thunder.</i>
8. Vĕtō	-āre	vĕtūi	vĕtĭtum		<i>forbid.</i>

-ūi, -tum.

(2) — Sĕcō	-āre	sĕcūi	sectum	<i>cut.</i>
------------	------	-------	--------	-------------

Redupl., -tum.

(3) 1. Dō	-āre	dĕdī	dātum	<i>give.</i>
2. Stō	-āre	stĕtī	statum	<i>stand.</i>

-vī, -tum.

(4) 1. Jūvō	-āre	jūvī	jūtum	<i>help.</i>
2. Lāvō	-āre	lāvī	lōtum	<i>wash.</i>

(1) 5. Also plicāvī, plicātum.

(3) 1. Dō, dārĕ, has short ā throughout ; with the compounds circumdō, *surround* ; pessumdō, *ruin* ; vēnumdō, *put on sale*, which form -dĕdī, -dātum. The other compounds pass to the Third Conj. and form -dīdī, -dītum. III. 18.

2. Comp. ad- con- ob- per- prae-stō, etc., form stītī, statum (-stītum rare).

(4) 2. Also Sup. lāvatum.

II. SECOND CONJUGATION (Character **E**: MonĒ-rĕ).

Usual Form :	-ĕō		-ūi	-itum
	Mōn-ĕō	-ĕrĕ	mōn-ūi	mōn-itum.

Exceptions.

-vī, -tum.

(1) 1. Dĕlēō	-ĕrĕ	dĕlēvī	dĕlētum	<i>blot out.</i>
2. Flĕō	-ĕrĕ	flĕvī	flĕtum	<i>weep.</i>
3. -plĕō	-ĕrĕ	-plĕvī	-plĕtum	<i>fill.</i>

-ūi, -tum.

(2) 1. Dōcĕō	-ĕrĕ	dōcūi	doctum	<i>teach.</i>
2. Miscĕō	-ĕrĕ	miscūi	mistum	<i>mix.</i>
3. Tĕnĕō	-ĕrĕ	tĕnūi	-tentum	<i>hold.</i>

(1) 5. -plicūi -plicĭtum. Forms thus noted are only used in the compounds.

## -sī, -tum.

	Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
(3) 1.	Augĕō	-ĕrĕ	auxī	auctum	<i>increase.</i>
2.	Torquĕō	-ĕrĕ	torsī	tortum	<i>twist.</i>
3.	Lūgĕō	-ĕrĕ	luxī	—	<i>mourn.</i>

## -sī, -sum.

(4) 1.	Mulcĕō	-ĕrĕ	multī	multum	<i>soothe.</i>
2.	Ardĕō	-ĕrĕ	arsī	arsum	<i>take fire.</i>
3.	Rīdĕō	-ĕrĕ	rīsī	rīsum	<i>laugh.</i>
4.	Suādĕō	-ĕrĕ	suāsī	suāsum	<i>advise.</i>
5.	Mānĕō	-ĕrĕ	mansī	mansum	<i>remain.</i>
6.	Jūbĕō	-ĕrĕ	jussī	jussum	<i>command.</i>
7.	Haerĕō	-ĕrĕ	haesī	haesum	<i>stick.</i>
8.	Fulgĕō	-ĕrĕ	fulsī	—	<i>glitter.</i>
9.	Lūcĕō	-ĕrĕ	luxī	—	<i>shine.</i>

## Redupl., -sum.

(5) 1.	Mordĕō	-ĕrĕ	mōmordī	morsum	<i>bite.</i>
2.	Pendĕō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpendī	pensum	<i>hang.</i>
3.	Spondĕō	-ĕrĕ	spōpondī	sponsum	<i>pledge, promise.</i>
4.	Tondĕō	-ĕrĕ	tōtondī	tonsum	<i>shear.</i>

## -ī, -sum.

(6) 1.	Prandĕō	-ĕrĕ	prandī	pransum	<i>lunch, dine.</i>
2.	Sĕdĕō	-ĕrĕ	sĕdī	sessum	<i>sit.</i>
3.	Vīdĕō	-ĕrĕ	vīdī	vīsum	<i>see.</i>

## -ī, -tum.

(7) 1.	Cāvĕō	-ĕrĕ	cāvī	cautum	<i>beware.</i>
2.	Fāvĕō	-ĕrĕ	fāvī	fautum	<i>favour.</i>
3.	Fōvĕō	-ĕrĕ	fōvī	fōtum	<i>cherish.</i>
4.	Mōvĕō	-ĕrĕ	mōvī	mōtum	<i>move.</i>
5.	Vōvĕō	-ĕrĕ	vōvī	vōtum	<i>vow.</i>

## Semi-deponent.

(8) 1.	Audĕō	-ĕrĕ	ausŭs sum	—	<i>dare.</i>
2.	Gaudĕō	-ĕrĕ	gāvīsŭs sum	—	<i>rejoice.</i>
3.	Sōlēō	-ĕrĕ	sōlītŭs sum	—	<i>be wont.</i>

III. THIRD CONJUGATION (Character a **Consonant** or **U**).

Form various. Rĕg-ĕrĕ; Indŭ-ĕrĕ.

## A. Consonant-Verbs.

Guttural Stems, -sī, -tum (*five -sum*).

(1) 1.	Dīcō	-ĕrĕ	dixī	dictum	<i>say.</i>
2.	Dūcō	-ĕrĕ	duxī	ductum	<i>lead.</i>
3.	Cīngō	-ĕrĕ	cīnxī	cīntum	<i>surround.</i>
4.	Cōquō	-ĕrĕ	coxī	coctum	<i>cook.</i>
5.	Fīgō	-ĕrĕ	fixī	fixum	<i>fix.</i>
6.	Fīngō	-ĕrĕ	finxī	fictum	<i>fashion.</i>
7.	Jūngō	-ĕrĕ	jūnxī	junctum	<i>join.</i>

	Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
	8. Pīngō	-ĕrĕ	pinxī	pictum	<i>paint.</i>
	9. Rĕgō	-ĕrĕ	rexī	rectum	<i>rule.</i>
	10. Tĕgō	-ĕrĕ	texī	tectum	<i>cover.</i>
	11. -stinguō	-ĕrĕ	-stinxī	-stinctum	<i>quenched.</i>
	12. Tinguō	-ĕrĕ	tinxī	tinctum	<i>dye.</i>
	13. Unguō	-ĕrĕ	unxī	unctum	<i>anoint.</i>
(2)	1. Trāhō	-ĕrĕ	traxī	tractum	<i>draw.</i>
	2. Vĕhō	-ĕrĕ	vexī	vectum	<i>carry.</i>
	3. Vivō	-ĕrĕ	vixī	victum	<i>live.</i>
	4. Flŭō	-ĕrĕ	fluxī	fluxum	<i>flow.</i>
	5. Strŭō	-ĕrĕ	struxī	structum	<i>pile.</i>
	6. -lāciō	-ĕrĕ	-lexī	-lectum	<i>entice.</i>
	7. -spĕciō	-ĕrĕ	-spexī	-spectum	<i>espy.</i>
(3)	1. Mergō	-ĕrĕ	mersī	mersum	<i>drown.</i>
	2. Spargō	-ĕrĕ	sparsī	sparsum	<i>sprinkle.</i>
	3. Tergō	-ĕrĕ	tersī	tersum	<i>wipe.</i>

## Dental Stems, -sī, -sum.

(4)	1. Claudō	-ĕrĕ	clausī	clausum	<i>shut.</i>
	2. Divīdō	-ĕrĕ	dīvisī	dīvisum	<i>divide.</i>
	3. Laedō	-ĕrĕ	laesī	laesum	<i>hurt.</i>
	4. Lūdō	-ĕrĕ	lūsī	lūsum	<i>play.</i>
	5. Plaudō	-ĕrĕ	plausī	plausum	<i>clap the hands.</i>
	6. Rādō	-ĕrĕ	rāsī	rāsum	<i>scrape.</i>
	7. Rōdō	-ĕrĕ	rōsī	rōsum	<i>gnaw.</i>
	8. Trūdō	-ĕrĕ	trūsī	trūsum	<i>thrust.</i>
	9. Vādō	-ĕrĕ	-vāsī	-vāsum	<i>go.</i>
	10. Cēdō	-ĕrĕ	cessī	cessum	<i>yield.</i>
	11. Mittō	-ĕrĕ	mīsī	missum	<i>send.</i>
	12. Quāt-īō	-ĕrĕ	(quassī)	quassum	<i>shake.</i>
	13. Flectō	-ĕrĕ	flexī	flexum	<i>bend.</i>
	14. Nectō	-ĕrĕ	nexī	nexum	<i>bind.</i>

## Labial Stems, -sī, -tum.

(5)	1. Carpō	-ĕrĕ	carpsī	carptum	<i>pluck.</i>
	2. Repō	-ĕrĕ	repsī	reptum	<i>creep.</i>
	3. Scalpō	-ĕrĕ	scalpsī	scalptum	<i>scratch.</i>
	4. Serpō	-ĕrĕ	(serpsī)	(serptum)	<i>crawl.</i>
	5. Nŭbō	-ĕrĕ	nupsī	nuptum	<i>be married.</i>
	6. Scribō	-ĕrĕ	scripsī	scriptum	<i>write.</i>

## Liquid Stems, -sī, -tum (one -sum).

(6)	1. Cōmō	-ĕrĕ	compsī	comptum	<i>adorn.</i>
	2. Dēmō	-ĕrĕ	dempsī	demptum	<i>take away.</i>
	3. Prōmō	-ĕrĕ	prompsī	promptum	<i>take forth.</i>
	4. Sŭmō	-ĕrĕ	sumpsī	sumptum	<i>take.</i>
	5. Temnō	-ĕrĕ	tempsī	temptum	<i>despise.</i>
	6. Prēmō	-ĕrĕ	pressī	preptum	<i>press.</i>
	7. Gērō	-ĕrĕ	gessī	gestum	<i>carry on.</i>
	8. Ūrō	-ĕrĕ	ussī	ustum	<i>burn.</i>

Stem various, -ŭī, -tum (*one -sum*).

	Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
(7) 1.	Elīciō	-ĕrĕ	ĕlīciŭ	ĕlīcitum	<i>entice forth.</i>
2.	Cumbō	-ĕrĕ	cŭbŭi	cŭbitum	<i>lie down.</i>
3.	Răpiō	-ĕrĕ	răpiŭ	raptum	<i>seize.</i>
	Strĕpō	-ĕrĕ	strĕpŭi	strĕpĭtum	<i>roar.</i>
5.	Mĕtō	-ĕrĕ	messŭi	messum	<i>mow.</i>
6.	Alō	-ĕrĕ	ălŭi	altum	<i>nourish.</i>
7.	Cōlō	-ĕrĕ	cōlŭi	cultum	<i>till.</i>
8.	Consŭlō	-ĕrĕ	consŭlŭi	consultum	<i>consult.</i>
9.	Occŭlō	-ĕrĕ	occŭlŭi	occultum	<i>hide.</i>
10.	Vōlō	velle	vōlŭi	—	<i>wish.</i>
11.	Frĕmō	-ĕrĕ	frĕmŭi	frĕmĭtum	<i>murmur.</i>
12.	Gĕmō	-ĕrĕ	gĕmŭi	gĕmĭtum	<i>groan.</i>
13.	Trĕmō	-ĕrĕ	trĕmŭi	—	<i>tremble.</i>
14.	Vōmō	-ĕrĕ	vōmŭi	vōmĭtum	<i>vomit.</i>
15.	Pōnō	-ĕrĕ	pōsŭi	pōsitum	<i>place.</i>
16.	Gignō	-ĕrĕ	gĕnŭi	gĕnĭtum	<i>produce.</i>
17.	Sĕrō	-ĕrĕ	sĕrŭi	sertum	<i>join.</i>
18.	Texō	-ĕrĕ	texŭi	textum	<i>weave.</i>

## Present Stem Anomalous, -vī, -tum.

(8) 1.	Līnō	-ĕrĕ	lĕvī	lĭtum	<i>smear.</i>
2.	Sīnō	-ĕrĕ	sīvī	sĭtum	<i>allow.</i>
3.	Cernō	-ĕrĕ	crĕvī	crĕtum	<i>sift, discern.</i>
4.	Spernō	-ĕrĕ	sprĕvī	sprĕtum	<i>despise.</i>
5.	Sternō	-ĕrĕ	strāvī	strātum	<i>strew.</i>
6.	Sĕrō	-ĕrĕ	sĕvī	sātum	<i>sow.</i>
7.	Crescō	-ĕrĕ	crĕvī	crĕtum	<i>grow.</i> [with.
8.	Noscō	-ĕrĕ	nōvī	nōtum	<i>become acquainted</i>
9.	Pascō	-ĕrĕ	pāvī	pastum	<i>feed.</i>
10.	Quĕscō	-ĕrĕ	quĕvī	—	<i>rest.</i>
11.	Suescō	-ĕrĕ	suĕvī	suĕtum	<i>be wont.</i>
12.	Cupĭō	-ĕrĕ	cŭpĭvī	cŭpĭtum	<i>desire.</i>
13.	Pĕtō	-ĕrĕ	pĕtĭvī	pĕtĭtum	<i>seek.</i>
14.	Quaerō	-ĕrĕ	quaesĭvī	quaesĭtum	<i>seek.</i>
15.	Tĕrō	-ĕrĕ	trĭvī	trĭtum	<i>rub.</i>
16.	Arcessō	-ĕrĕ	arcessĭvī	arcessĭtum	<i>send for.</i>
17.	Lăcessō	-ĕrĕ	lăcessĭvī	lăcessĭtum	<i>provoke.</i>

## Redupl., -tum or -sum.

(9) 1.	Pendō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpendī	pensum	<i>weigh.</i>
2.	Tendō	-ĕrĕ	tĕtendī	tensum(-tum)	<i>stretch.</i>
3.	Discō	-ĕrĕ	dĭdĭcĭ	—	<i>learn.</i>
4.	Poscō	-ĕrĕ	pōposcĭ	—	<i>demand.</i>
5.	Currō	-ĕrĕ	cŭcurrĭ	cursum	<i>run.</i>
6.	Pungō	-ĕrĕ	pŭpŭgĭ	punctum	<i>prick.</i>
7.	Tundō	-ĕrĕ	tŭtŭdĭ	tunsum	<i>thump.</i>
8.	Fallō	-ĕrĕ	fĕfellĭ	falsum	<i>deceive.</i>
9.	Parcō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpercĭ	parsum	<i>spare.</i>
10.	Păriō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpĕrĭ	partum	<i>bring forth.</i>

(9) 9. Also Perf. parsĭ.

Present.	Infm.	Perfect.	Supine.	
11. Cādō	-ĕrĕ	cĕcīdī	cāsum	<i>fall.</i>
12. Cānō	-ĕrĕ	cĕcīnī	cantum	<i>sing.</i>
13. Pangō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpīgī	pactum	<i>fasten.</i>
14. Tangō	-ĕrĕ	tĕtīgī	tactum	<i>touch.</i>
15. Caedō	-ĕrĕ	cĕcīdī	caesum	<i>cut, beat, kill.</i>
16. Pellō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpŭlī	pulsum	<i>drive.</i>
17. Tollō	-ĕrĕ	sustŭlī	sublātum	<i>take up.</i>
18. Compounds of dō:				
Abdō	-ĕrĕ	abdīdī	abdītum	<i>hide.</i>
Addō	-ĕrĕ	addīdī	addītum	<i>add.</i>
Condō	-ĕrĕ	condīdī	condītum	<i>found, hide.</i>
Crĕdō	-ĕrĕ	crĕdīdī	crĕdītum	<i>believe.</i>
Dĕdō	-ĕrĕ	dĕdīdī	dĕdītum	<i>give up.</i>
Ēdō	-ĕrĕ	ĕdīdī	ĕdītum	<i>give forth, utter.</i>
Perdō	-ĕrĕ	perdīdī	perdītum	<i>lose.</i>
Prōdō	-ĕrĕ	prōdīdī	prōdītum	<i>betray.</i>
Reddō	-ĕrĕ	reddīdī	reddītum	<i>restore.</i>
Subdō	-ĕrĕ	subdīdī	subdītum	<i>substitute.</i>
Trādō	-ĕrĕ	trādīdī	trādītum	<i>deliver.</i>
Vendō	-ĕrĕ	vendīdī	vendītum	<i>sell.</i>
19. Reduplicated from stō:				
Sistō	-ĕrĕ	-stītī	-stātum	<i>make to stand.</i>

## -ī with lengthened Stem-vowel, -tum (three -sum).

(10) 1.	Fācīō	-ĕrĕ	fĕcī	factum	<i>make.</i>
2.	Jācīō	-ĕrĕ	jĕcī	jactum	<i>throw.</i>
3.	Līnquō	-ĕrĕ	līquī	-lictum	<i>leave.</i>
4.	Vīncō	-ĕrĕ	vīcī	victum	<i>conquer.</i>
5.	Āgō	-ĕrĕ	ĕgī	actum	<i>do.</i>
6.	Frangō	-ĕrĕ	frĕgī	fractum	<i>break.</i>
7.	Lĕgō	-ĕrĕ	lĕgī	lectum	<i>choose, read.</i>
8.	Fŭgīō	-ĕrĕ	fŭgī	fŭgītum	<i>fly.</i>
9.	Ēdō	-ĕrĕ	ĕdī	ĕsum	<i>eat.</i>
10.	Fōdīō	-ĕrĕ	fōdī	fossum	<i>dig.</i>
11.	Fundō	-ĕrĕ	fūdī	fūsum	<i>pour.</i>
12.	Cāpīō	-ĕrĕ	cĕpī	captum	<i>take.</i>
13.	Rŭmpō	-ĕrĕ	rŭpī	ruptum	<i>break.</i>
14.	Ēmō	-ĕrĕ	ĕmī	emptum	<i>buy, take.</i>

## -ī, -sum.

(11) 1.	Findō	-ĕrĕ	fīdī	fissum	<i>cleave.</i>
2.	Scindō	-ĕrĕ	scīdī	scissum	<i>tear.</i>

## -ī, -sum (one -tum).

(12) 1.	-candō	-ĕrĕ	-cendī	-censum	<i>set on fire.</i>
2.	-fendō	-ĕrĕ	-fendī	-fensum	<i>strike.</i>
3.	Pandō	-ĕrĕ	pandī	pansum	<i>spread.</i>
4.	Prĕhendō	-ĕrĕ	prĕhendī	prĕhensum	<i>grasp.</i>
5.	Scandō	-ĕrĕ	scandī	scansum	<i>climb.</i>
6.	Vertō	-ĕrĕ	vertī	versum	<i>turn.</i>
7.	Bībō	-ĕrĕ	bībī	bībītum	<i>drink.</i>
8.	Vellō	-ĕrĕ	vellī, vulsī	vulsum	<i>rend.</i>

## B. U-verbs: -ī, -tum.

	Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
(13) 1.	Acūō	-ěřě	áčūī	áčūtum	<i>sharpen.</i>
2.	Argūō	-ěřě	argūī	argūtum	<i>prove.</i>
3.	Exūō	-ěřě	exūī	exūtum	<i>put off.</i>
4.	Imbūō	-ěřě	imbūī	imbūtum	<i>tinge.</i>
5.	Indūō	-ěřě	indūī	indūtum	<i>put on.</i>
6.	Lūō	-ěřě	lūī	lūtum	<i>wash, atone.</i>
7.	Mětūō	-ěřě	mětūī	—	<i>fear.</i>
8.	Mīnūō	-ěřě	mīnūī	mīnūtum	<i>lessen.</i>
9.	Nūō	-ěřě	nūī	—	<i>nod.</i>
10.	Rūō	-ěřě	rūī	rūtum	<i>rush, fall.</i>
11.	Stātūō	-ěřě	stātūī	stātūtum	<i>set up.</i>
12.	Trībūō	-ěřě	trībūī	trībūtum	<i>assign.</i>
13.	Solvō	-ěřě	solvī	sōlūtum	<i>loosen.</i>
14.	Volvō	-ěřě	volvī	vōlūtum	<i>roll.</i>

IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION (Character **II**: Audī- rě).

Usual Form :	-īō	-īřě	-īvī	-ītum
	Audīō	-īřě	audīvī	audītum.

## Exceptions.

## -ūī or īvī, -tum.

(1) 1.	Āpěřīō	-īřě	āpěřūī	āpertum	<i>open.</i>
2.	Ōpěřīō	-īřě	ōpěřūī	ōpertum	<i>cover.</i>
3.	Sālīō	-īřě	sālūī	(-sultum)	<i>leap.</i>
4.	Sěpěļīō	-īřě	sěpěļīvī	sěpultum	<i>bury.</i>

## -sī, -tum (one -sum).

(2) 1.	Fulcīō	-īřě	fulsī	fultum	<i>prop.</i>
2.	Sancīō	-īřě	sanxī	sanctum	<i>consecrate.</i>
3.	Vincīō	-īřě	vinxī	vinctum	<i>bind.</i>
4.	Haurīō	-īřě	hausī	haustum	<i>draw.</i>
5.	Sentiō	-īřě	sensī	sensum	<i>feel.</i>

## -ī, -tum.

(3) 1.	Compěřīō	-īřě	compěřī	compertum	<i>find.</i>
2.	Rěpěřīō	-īřě	reppěřī	rěpertum	<i>discover.</i>
3.	Věņīō	-īřě	věņī	ventum	<i>come.</i>

## V. DEPONENT VERBS.

(1) FIRST CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -ātūs).

(2) SECOND CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -ītūs).

## Exceptions.

Present.	Infín.	Part. Perf.	
1. Fătěör	-ēri	fassūs	<i>confess.</i>
2. Misěreör	-ēri	mīsertūs or mīsērītūs	<i>have pity on.</i>
3. Rěör	-ēri	rātūs	<i>think.</i>

(3) THIRD CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -tūs or -sūs).

	Present.	Infín.	Part. Perf.	
(a) 1.	Fungör	-ī	functūs	<i>perform.</i>
2.	Amplectör	-ī	amplexūs	<i>embrace.</i>
3.	Nītör	-ī	nīsūs or nixūs	<i>strive.</i>
4.	Pätior	-i	passūs	<i>suffer.</i>
5.	Ūtör	-ī	ūsūs	<i>use.</i>
6.	Grädior	-ī	gressūs	<i>step.</i>
7.	Labör	-ī	lapsūs	<i>glide.</i>
8.	Mörior	-ī	mortūūs	<i>die.</i>
9.	Quěrör	-ī	questūs	<i>complain.</i>
10.	Früör	-ī	frütūs	<i>enjoy.</i>
11.	Löquör	-ī	lēcūtūs	<i>speak.</i>
12.	Sěquör	-ī	sēcūtūs	<i>follow.</i>
(b) 1.	Āpiscör	-ī	aptūs	<i>obtain.</i>
2.	Commīniscör	-ī	commentūs	<i>devise.</i>
3.	Expěrgiscör	-ī	experrectūs	<i>wake up.</i>
4.	Fätiscör	-ī	fessūs	<i>grow weary.</i>
5.	Īrascör	-ī	irātūs	<i>be angry.</i>
6.	Nāniscör	-ī	nactūs	<i>obtain.</i>
7.	Nāscör	-ī	nātūs	<i>be born.</i>
8.	Obliviscör	-ī	oblītūs	<i>forget.</i>
9.	Pāciscör	-ī	pactūs	<i>bargain.</i>
10.	Pröfīciscör	-ī	pröfectūs	<i>set out.</i>
11.	Uleiscör	-ī	ultūs	<i>avenge.</i>

(4) FOURTH CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -ītūs).

## Exceptions.

1.	Assentīör	-īri	assensūs	<i>agree to.</i>
2.	Expěriör	-īri	expertūs	<i>try.</i>
3.	Mětīör	-īri	mensūs	<i>measure.</i>
4.	Oppěriör	-īri	oppertūs	<i>wait for.</i>
5.	Ordīör	-īri	orsūs	<i>begin.</i>
6.	Öriör	-īri	ortūs	<i>rise.</i>

*Note.* Inceptive Verbs form the Perfect and Supine as their Primitives: as, ingēmiscō (from gēmō), ingēmūi, ingēmītum. Many Verbs are without Perfect; more still without Supine.



## PARTICLES.

## A. ADVERBS.

§ 82. I. ADVERBS OF PLACE answer the questions:—

- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| (1) Ůbĩ, <i>where?</i>           | (4) Undě, <i>whence?</i>                |
| (2) Quō, <i>whither?</i>         | (5) Quā, <i>which way?</i>              |
| (3) Quorsum, <i>whitherward?</i> | (6) Quātěnūs, quōusquě, <i>how far?</i> |

II. ADVERBS OF TIME answer the questions:

- |                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) Quandō, ůbĩ, <i>when?</i> | (2) Quamdĩū, <i>how long?</i> |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|

III. ADVERBS OF NUMBER answer the question Quōtĩēs, *how often?*

IV. ADVERBS OF DESCRIPTION express Manner, Quality, Quantity, etc.

Many are derived from Adjectives, and end in ē, těr; as, pulchrē, *finely*; mĩsěrē, *wretchedly*; fortĩtěr, *bravely*; sǎpĩentěr, *wisely*.

*Note.* Adverbs of Negation are nōn, haud, *not*.

## B. PREPOSITIONS.

§ 83. The following Prepositions take the Accusative Case.

Ād, <i>to, at, &amp;c.</i>	Juxtā, <i>adjoining to, beside.</i>
Adversūs } <i>toward, against.</i>	Ōb, <i>over against, by reason of.</i>
Adversum }	Pěnēs, <i>in the power of.</i>
Āntě, <i>before.</i>	Pěr, <i>through.</i>
Āpūd, <i>at, in, among.</i>	Pōně, <i>behind.</i>
Circum, <i>around.</i>	Post, <i>after, behind.</i>
Circā, circĩtěr, <i>about.</i>	Praetěr, <i>beside.</i>
Cis, cĩtrā, <i>on the near side of.</i>	Prōpě, <i>near, prōpiūs, proximē.</i>
Contrā, <i>against, over against.</i>	Proptěr, <i>nigh, on account of.</i>
Ergā, <i>towards.</i>	Sēcundum, <i>next, along, according to.</i>
Extrā, <i>outside of, out of.</i>	Sŭprā, <i>above.</i>
Infrā, <i>below.</i>	Trans, <i>across.</i>
Intěr, <i>between, among, amidst.</i>	Ultrā, <i>beyond.</i>
Intrā, <i>within.</i>	Versūs, Versum, <i>towards.</i>

The following take the Ablative Case.

Ā, āb, abs, <i>by, from.</i>	Ex, ē, <i>out of, from.</i>
Absquě (rare), <i>without.</i>	Pālam, <i>in sight of.</i>
Clam, <i>without the knowledge of.*</i>	Prae, <i>before, owing to, compared with.</i>
Cōram, <i>in the presence of.</i>	Prō, <i>before, for, instead of.</i>
Cum, <i>with.</i>	Sĩně, <i>without.</i>
Dě, <i>down from, from, concerning.</i>	Těnūs, <i>reaching to, as far as.</i>

*Note.* Cum is attached to the Personal, Reflexive, and Relative Pronouns; as, mēcum, nōbiscum, tēcum, vōbiscum, sēcum, quēcum, or quĩcum, quibuscum.

\* Clam also takes Accusative.

The following take the Accusative or the Ablative.

Īn, *into, against* (Acc.), *in, upon, among* (Abl.).      Sŭpěr, *over, upon*.  
Sŭb, *up to, under* (Acc.), *under* (Abl.).              Subtěr, *under*.

Īn and sŭb with Accusative imply motion ; with Ablative, rest.

II. The Prepositions and Particles compounded with Verbs are :—

A. Prepositions :—ā (āb, abs), ād, antě, circum, con (for cum), dē, ex (ē), ĩn, intěr, ōb, pěr, post, prae, praetěr, prō, sŭb, subtěr, sŭper, trans.

B. Inseparable Particles :—ambi- (amb-), *around, about* ; dis-, *dī-, in different parts or ways* ; rě-, *back, again* ; sē-, *apart*.

Note 1. Prepositions in composition suffer various changes ; such as, combībō for conbībō, offendō for obfendō, trādŭcō for transdŭcō.

Note 2. Many Verbs in Composition suffer vowel-change : (1) *a* into *e*, as spargō, dispergō ; (2) *a* into *u*, as quātŭō, concŭtŭō ; (3) *a* into *i*, as āgō, exĭgō ; (4) *e* into *i*, as rēgō, dirĭgō ; (5) *ae* into *i*, as, quaerō, acquĭrō. Add to these, claudō, exclŭdō, &c. ; plaudō, supplōdō, &c. ; and audĭō, ōbēdĭō.

### C. CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 84. CONJUNCTIONS are—

1. Coordinative, or those which join words and sentences but do not affect Mood : as, ět, quě, ac, atquě (*and*), aut, věl, vě (*either, or*), sěd, autem (*but*), nam, ěnim (*for*), &c.
2. Subordinative, or those which join sentences, influencing Mood : as, ŭt (*that*), ně (*lest*), quōd, quĭā (*because*), quum (*when, since*), sĭ (*if*), nĭsĭ (*unless*), &c., &c.

§ 85. The Interrogative Particles cannot be rendered in English without the Verbs, to which they impart an Interrogative force :—

They are, the enclitic -ně, ān, num, ŭtrum (*whether*) : the compounds of the last three with -ně ; namely, anně, numně, ŭtrumně : and the compounds of ān, -ně, with the negative ; namely, annōn, nonně.

### D. INTERJECTIONS.

§ 86. An Interjection is an exclamatory word, used either to draw attention, or to express feeling of some kind. The most usual Interjections are—

O, O! *oh!*

A or āh, *alas!*

Ĕheu,  
Heu, hei, } *alas!*

Prō or prōh, *forbid it!*

Vae, *woe!*

Ĕn,  
Eccě, } *lo! behold!*

Note. Of these, O, ā, ěheu, heu, prō, may be used with a Vocative Case : the same, as well as ěn, eccě, with a Nominative or Accusative : hei, vae, with a Dative.

## SYNTAX.

### PREFATORY EXCURSION.

§ 87. *A.* A Simple Sentence is the expression of a single thought :

Psittăcūs lōquitūr, <i>The parrot speaks.</i>	Psittăcūs nōn lōquitūr, <i>The parrot does not speak.</i>
--	--

*B.* That of which something is said, is called the Subject : as, Psittăcūs, *the parrot.*

*a.* The Subject must be a Substantive, or a Noun-term which can take its place, as an Adjective, Pronoun, Infinitive, or Clause.

*C.* The Finite Verb, which declares what is said of the Subject, and makes a complete sense, is called the Predicate: as, Lōquitūr, *speaks.*

*a.* Since Pronoun Subjects are implied in the Endings (§ 44 *Obs.*), a single Verb may be a sentence :

Vēnī, <i>I came,</i>	Vidī, <i>I saw,</i>	Vīcī, <i>I conquered.</i>
-------------------------	------------------------	------------------------------

*D.* Any Finite part of the Verb sum (essē), to *be*, is usually a Cōpŭlă, or *Link*; and a word linked by it to the Subject, and completing the sense, is called a Complement; both together forming the Predicate:

	Predicate.	
Subject.	Copula.	Complement.
Hōmō	est	mortălis,
<i>Man</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>mortal.</i>
Hōmīnēs	sunt	ănimăliă,
<i>Men</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>animals.</i>

*Note.* The Copula is often omitted : as, Rări bōni, (*good men are few*).

*a.* Other Verbs besides sum link a Subject and Complement, and are called Copulative (Link) Verbs: as, fīō, *become*; nascōr, *am born*; vidēōr, *seem*; dīcōr, *am said*; vōcōr, *am called*; pŭtōr, *am thought*, &c.

*E.* An Adjective agreeing with any Noun-term is said to be in Attribution, and may be (1) Epithet; (2) Attributive Complement.

(1) Doctī vīrī, <i>Learned men.</i>	(2) Hī vīrī sunt doctī, <i>These men are learned.</i>
--	--

2. A Substantive agreeing with any Noun-term is said to be in Apposition, and may be (1) Epithetic; (2) Appositive Complement.

(1) Rex Croesūs, <i>King Croesus.</i>	(2) Croesūs fŭit rex, <i>Croesus was king.</i>
--	---

## SYNTAXIS MEMORIALIS PRIMA.

## DE CONGRUENTIA.

## REGULAE QUATTUOR GENERALES.

§ 88. I. Verbum Finitum cum Nominativō Subjecti congruit nūmērō et persōnā:

Māgister dōcēt.  
Lībrī lēguntūr.

Tū dōcēs: nōs discimūs.  
Discērē est ūtilē.

§ 89. II. Adjectivum gēnērē, nūmērō, et cāsū congruit cum ēō cui attribuitūr:

Vīr bōnūs illē bōnam hanc uxōrem hābēt.  
Hīrūdō pullīs sūis orbātā quērītūr.  
Cārī sunt pārentēs; cārā est pātriā.  
Pūērī discendō fiunt doctī.

§ 90. III. Substantivum cāsū congruit cum ēō cui appōnitūr:

Nōs pūērī pātrēm Lollīum imitābimūr.  
Effōdiuntūr opēs, irritāmentā mālōrum.  
Spēs est exspectātiō bōnī.  
Syllābā longā brevī subjectā vōcātūr Iambus.

§ 91. IV. Rēlativum cum Antecedentē congruit gēnērē, nūmērō, et persōnā; sēd cāsū spectāt sūam clausulam:

Dēum vēnērāmūr quī nōs creāvīt.  
Amīcūs est, quem amāmūs, ā quō amāmūr.  
Amō tē, mātēr, quae mē amās.

## DE SUBJECTO COMPOSITO.

§ 92. Cum Subjectō Compositō plūrālīā congruunt:  
Vēnēnō absumptī sunt Hannibāl et Philōpoemēn.

1. In diversitātē persōnārum Verbā congruunt cum Priōrē Persōnā:

Sī tū et Tullīā vālētīs, ēgō et Cīcērō vālēmūs.

2. În diversitate genurum Adjectivă congruunt cum Masculō pōtiūs quam cum Fēmininō :

Pătēr mīhī ēt mātēr *mortūi* sunt.

a. Rēbūs inānimīs attribūitūr saepē gēnūs Neutrum :  
Divītiaē, dēcūs, glōriā in oculīs *sitā* sunt.

## DE CASIBUS.

DE CASIBUS SUBJECTI ET COMPLEMENTI. § 87.

§ 93. (1) Fīnitī Verbī Subjectum Nōmīnātīvūs est :  
*Annī* fūgiunt.

(2) Infīnitīvī Subjectum in Accūsātīvō pōnitūr :  
Constāt *annōs* fūgērē. | Scīmūs *annōs* fūgērē.

§ 94. Verbā Cōpūlātīvā, sīvē Fīnitā sīvē Infīnitīvā, Complēmentum plērumquē cum Subjectō congrūens hābent :

<i>Vitā</i> est <i>somnīum</i> .		<i>Nēmō</i> nascitūr <i>sāpiens</i> .
<i>Vitā</i> dicitūr esse <i>somnīum</i> .		<i>Nēmō</i> pōtest nascī <i>sāpiens</i> .
Aiunt <i>vītam</i> esse <i>somnīum</i> .		
Constāt <i>nēmīnem</i> nascī <i>sāpiētem</i> .		

a. Accūsātīvī cum Infīnitīvō constructiō vōcātūr Eñun-tiātīō Oblīquā.

## DE ACCUSATIVO.

§ 95. Accūsātīvūs est Cāsūs Prōpiōris Objectī. Necnōn līmītandī vim hābēt.

### I. ACCUSATIVUS OBJECTI.

§ 96. Verbā Transītīvā rēgunt Accūsātīvum Objectī :  
Mātēr ālit *pullōs*. | In primīs vērē *Dēum*.

§ 97. Intransītīvā cāpiunt Accūsātīvum vī cognātā :  
Dūram servit *servitūtem*.  
Claudiūs *ālēm* lūsīt.

§ 98. Verbā quaedam, *rōgandī* praesertim ēt *dōcendī*, bīnōs admittunt Accūsātīvōs, altērum Rēi, altērum Persōnae :

Nunquam *divitiās dēos rōgāvi*.  
Quid nunc *tē littērās dōcēam*?

§ 99. Verbā Factitīvā, scilicet *fāciendī*, *vōcandī*, *pūtandī*, sīmiliā, bīnōs hābent Accūsātīvōs, altērum Objectī, altērum Complēmentī :

*Tē faci*mus, Fortūnā, *dēam*.  
Rōmūlūs *urbem sūam Rōmam vōcāv*it.

## II. ACCUSATIVUS LIMITATIONIS.

§ 100. Accūsātīvūs Respectūs adjungitūr Verbīs ēt Adjectivīs, praesertim āpūd pōētās :

Trēmīt *artūs*. | Nūdae sunt *lācertōs*.

§ 101. Lōcūs, *Quō* itūr, in Accūsātīvō pōnitūr, idquē sinē Praepōsitōnē, sī vėl oppidī nōmēn est, vėl *dōmūs*, *rūs* :

Rēgūlūs *Carthāgīnem* rēdiit.  
Vōs itē *dōmum*: ēgō *rūs* ibō.

§ 102. (1) Dūrātīō Tempōris in Accūsātīvō pōnitūr :

Pēriclēs *quādrāgintā annōs* praefūit Athēnis.

(2) Mensūrā Spātīi in Accūsātīvō pōnitūr :

Ērant mūrī Bābylōnis *dūcēnōs pēdēs* altī.

§ 103. Accūsātīvum rēgunt multae Praepōsitōnēs : § 83.

*Antē*, āpūd, *ād*, *adversūs*,  
*Circum*, *circā*, *cūtrā*, *cīs*,  
*Contrā*, *intēr*, *ergā*, *extrā*,  
*Infrā*, *intrā*, *juxtā*, *ōb*,  
*Pēnēs*, *pōnē*, *post*, ēt *praetēr*,

*Prōpē*, *proptēr*, *pēr*, *sēcundum*,  
*Sūprā*, *versūs*, *ultrā*, *trans* ;  
His *sūpēr*, *subtēr*, *additō*,  
Et *in*, *sūb*, sī fīt mōtīō.

## DE DATIVO.

§ 104. Dātīvūs est Cāsūs Rēcipientīs seu Rēmōtīōris Objectī.

§ 105. I. Trājectīvā, quae sensum trājiciunt ād Rēmōtīūs Objectum, sunt multā Adjectīvā, Adverbīā, ēt Verbā, rārīūs Substantīvā, quībūs indicātūr

*Prōpinquītās* ēt *Dēmōstrātīō*,  
*Grātīficātīō*, *Dōmīnātīō*,  
Et hīs contrāriā quaequē nōtīō.

§ 106. Trājectivă căpiunt Dătivum, quum significantur :

(1) Pröpinquitās ēt contrāriă :

Est finitīmūs *ōrātōrī* pöetă.  
Nīl fūit unquam sic impār *sibī*.  
Congrūentēr *nātūrae* vīvendum est.  
Praesentiă confēr *praetērītis*.  
Nec tāmēn ignōrat quid distent aeră *lūpīnis*.

(2) Dēmonstrātiō ēt contrāriă :

Dīc *mīhī*, Dāmoetă, cūjum pęcūs ?  
Anguis *Sullae* appārūit immōlantī.  
Haud *cuiquam* in dūbiō ērăt bellum immīnērē.

(3) Grātificātiō ēt contrāriă :

*Pātrīae* sīt idōnēūs, ūtīlis *āgrīs*.  
Turbă grāvis *pācī* plācīdaēque inīmīcă *quīcētī*.  
Quōd *alīi* dōnăt *sibī* dētrāhīt.  
Lūcem reddē tūae, dux bōnē, *pātrīae*.  
*Nōbis* spondet fortună sālūtem.  
Nē libēāt *tibī* quod *nēmīnī* līcēt.  
Parcē piō *gēnērī*.  
Succensērē nēfās *pātrīae*.  
Rēsistendum est *appētītībūs*.

(4) Dōmīnātiō ēt contrāriă :

Sāpiens, *sibī* qui impērīōsus.  
*Omnībūs* supplex est.  
Impērăt aut servit collectă pęcūniă *cuique*.  
Mundūs *Dēō* pārēt, et *huic* ōboediunt măriă terraequē.

a. Intēr Trājectivă sunt multă Verbă compōsītă cum Particūlis, quālēs sunt

*Bēnē, mālē, sātīs, rē,*  
*Ād, antē, cōn, in, intēr, dē,*  
*Ob, sūb, sūpēr, post, ēt prae :*

*Cētērīs* sātisfāciō sempēr, *mīhī* nunquam.  
Sīcīliă quondam *Itālīae* ādhaesīt.  
Gīgantēs bellum *dīs* intūlērunt.  
Anātum ōvă *gallīnis* suppōnimūs.

§ 107. II. Dătivūs ūbivīs adjungī pōtest cum nōtīōnē quādam Commōdi vėl Incommōdi :

Esto, ut nunc multī, dīves *tibī*, paupēr *amicīs*.  
Nūmă virgīnēs *Vestae* lēgīt.  
Vēnūs nupsīt *Vulcānō*.  
*Philōsōphīae* sempēr vācō.

a. Hūc rēfēr Dătivum Prōnōmīnis, quī vōcātūr ēthīcūs :

Quid *mīhī* Celsūs āgit?

b. *Sum* cum compositis, praeter *possum*, caput Dativum :

<sup>3</sup> *Sum tibi* Mercūrius.  
*Vir mihi* semper adest.

c. *Est, sunt*, cum Dativō, *habēre* saepe significant :

*Est hōmīnī* cum Dēo similitūdō.  
*Sunt nobis* mitiā pōma.

d. Adjungitur idem Dativus Participiis et Participialibus Passivae Vocis, praesertim Gerundivis :

*Magnus civis* obit et formidatus *Ōthōnī*.  
*Multis* illē bonis flēbilis occidit.  
*Lēgendae* sunt *pueris* Aesōpī fabulae.

§ 108. III. Dativus Propositi pro Complemento ponitur, adjuncto saepe Dativō Recipientis :

Nimīa fiduciā *calamitatī* solēt esse.  
*Exitio* est avidum mare *nautis*.

§ 109. IV. Dativus Complementi per Attractionem ponitur, praesertim in nominandi formulis :

Licūt *Thēmistocli* esse *otiosō*.  
 Huic egō dīei nōmēn *Trinummo* faciam.

---

#### DE ABLATIVO.

§ 110. Ablativus est Causus rerum quae circumstant et adverbiali more limitant actionem. Definit etiam Tempus et Locum.

§ 111. I. Ablativus Causae :

Ōderunt peccare boni virtutis *amōre*.  
*Coeptis* immānibus effera Didō.

§ 112. II. Ablativus Instrumenti :

*Hī juculis*, illi certant defendere *saxis*.

§ 113. III. Ablativus Modī :

*Injuria* fit *duobus modis*, aut *vi* aut *fraude*.

§ 114. IV. Ablativus Conditionis :

*Pace tua* cum *Thaidē* colloquar.  
*Homo mea sententia* prudentissimus est.



## § 115. V. Ablativūs Quālitātis, cum Epithētō :

*Quā faciē fūit, cui dēdistī symbolum ?*  
*Sēnex prōmissā barbā, horrentī cāpillō.*

## § 116. VI. Ablativūs Rēspectūs :

*Angōr ānimō.*  
*Enniūs ingēniō maximūs, artē rūdis.*

## § 117. VII. Ablativūs Prētīi :

*Ēgō spem prētīō nōn ěmō.*  
*Quōd nōn ōpūs est, assē cārum est.*

## § 118. VIII. Ablativūs Mēnsūrae :

*Longum sesquīpēdē, lātum pēdē est.*  
*Sōl multīs partībūs mājōr est quam lūnā.*  
*Tantō pessimūs omnium pōētā,*  
*Quantō tu optimūs omnium patrōnūs.*

## § 119. IX. Ablativūs Mātēriae :

*Cībūs ēōrum lactē, cāsēō, carnē constāt.*

*a. Ablativum rēgunt: (1) Verbā fungōr, frūōr, ūtōr, vescōr, pōtīōr, dignōr; (2) Adjectīvā dignūs, indignūs, contentūs, frētūs, praeditūs; (3) Substantīvā ōpūs, ūsūs:*

(1) *Fungar vīcē cōtis.*

*Hannibāl, cum victōriā possēt ūtī, frūī mālūt.*  
*Rex impiūs aurō vī pōtītur. § 133.*

(2) *Dignum laudē vīrum Mūsā vētat mōrī.*

(3) *Ūbī rēs adsunt, quīd ōpūs est verbīs ?*  
*Ūsūs est filiō vīginti mēnīs.*

*b. Ex Adjectivīs ět Verbīs abundandī vėl ěgendī, dūtandī vėl prīvandī, plērāquē Ablativum cāpiunt, multā ětiam Gēnī-tivum :*

*Amōr ět mellē ět fellē est fēcundissimūs.*

*Nunquam ānimūs mōtū vācūūs est.*

*Vīs consīli expers mōlē rūit sūā.*

*Mancipīs lōcūplēs ěgēt aeris Cappādōcum rex.*

*Vācārē culpā maximū est sōlācium.*

§ 120. X. Ablativūs Tempōris respondēt, sī rōgātūr *Quandō ?*  
*Intrā quantum tempūs ? Quantō tempōrē antē vėl post ?*

*Hīēmē omniā bellā conquiescunt.*

*Quidquīd est bīdūō scīēmūs.*

*Hōmērūs annīs multīs fūit antē Rōmūlum.*

§ 121. XI. A. Ablativūs Lōcī pōnitūr sinē Praepōsitīōne,  
 cum rōgātūr, *Quā vīā ?*

*Ībam forțē Vīā Sācrā.*

B. Ablativūs saepē cārēt Praepōsitīōnē, cum rōgātūr *Ūbi?* maxīmē, sī oppīdī nōmēn est, vėl sī stāt cum Ēpithētō :

Philippūs *Něapōlī* est, Lentūlūs *Pūtēōlīs*.  
Tābernae *tōtā urbē* clauduntūr.

a. Oppīdōrum nōmīnā singulārīā ex Dēclīnātīōnē primā ēt sēcundā lōcum stātīōnīs dēfīnīunt pēr cāsūs īn *ae, ī* :

Quid *Rōmae* faciām? | Īs hābitāt *Mīlētī*.

b. Sīmīlīā sunt *hūmī, dōmī, bellī, mīlītīae, rurī* :

Caesārīs virtūs *dōmī mīlītīaequē* cognītā est.

C. Ablativūs oppīdī Praepōsitīōnē cārēt, cum rōgātūr *Undē?*

Dēmārātūs fūgīt *Cōrīnthō*.

a. Ītā *dōmō, rurē*. (Dē Accūsātīvō Lōcī *Quō* ītūr, v. § 101.)

§ 122. XII. Ablativūm rēgunt vāriāe Praepōsitīōnēs :

<i>A, āb, absquē, cōram, dē, Pālam, clam, cum, ex, et ē, Sīnē, tēnūs, prō, ēt prae :</i>	<i>Hīs sūpēr, subtēr, sūb addē- mūs, Ēt īn, dē stātū sī dīcēmūs.</i>
--	--

a. Praepōsitīōnēs ētīam compōsitāe rēgunt Ablativūm, prae-  
sertim *āb, dē, ex* :

Quinetiūs *dictātūrā* sē abdīcāvīt.  
Dētrūdunt nāvēs *scōpulō*.

b. Ablativūs Āgentīs expētīt Praepōsitīōnem *ā, āb* :

Laudātūr āb *hīs*, culpātūr āb *illīs*.

§ 123. XIII. Ablativūs Sēpārātīōnīs ēt Orīgīnīs ētīam sīnē  
Praepōsitīōnē Verbīs ēt Partīcīpīīs adjungītūr :

Cēdēs cōemptīs *saltībūs* et *dōmō*.  
*Pēlōpē* nātūs, *Tantālō* prognātūs est.

§ 124. XIV. Ablativūs Rēī Compārātae :

(1) Prō *quam* cum Nōmīnātīvō :

Nīhīl est āmābīlīūs *virtutē*.  
Vīlīūs argentum est *aurō, virtūtībūs* aurum.

(2) Prō *quam* cum Accūsātīvō :

Pūtō mortem *dēdēcōrē* lēvīōrem.  
Nēmīnem *Lýcurgō* ūtīlīōrem Spartā gēnūt.

§ 125. XV. Substantīvum cum Partīcīpīō cōālescīt īn  
Ablativō, quī vōcātūr Absōlūtūs :

*Rēgībūs exactīs* consūlēs creātī sunt.

a. Prō Participiō saepē supplētūr altĕrum Substantivum vĕl Adjectivum :

Nil despĕrandum Teucrō *dūce* et *auspicē* Teucrō.  
Nātūs est Augustūs *consulībūs* Cicerōnĕ ět Antōniō.  
Jamquĕ cĕnis, *vivīs* frātrībūs, Hectōr ěrat.  
Quid dicam, *hāc* jūventūtĕ?

## DE GENITIVO.

§ 126. Gĕnitivūs, Cāsūs Possidentis, nōmĭnā plĕrumquĕ dĕfĭnĭt subjectivĕ vĕl objectivĕ.

## A. GENITIVUS SUBJECTIVUS.

§ 127. I. Gĕnitivūs Auctōris ět Possessōris.

*Polyclētī* signā plānĕ perfectā sunt.  
*Singulōrum* ōpĕs sunt dĭvĭtĭae *cĭvĭtātĭs*.  
Omniā, quae *mūliĕris* fū ěrunt, *vĭrĭ* fiunt.  
Eā stātūā dicĕbātūr *Mŷrōnis*.

a. Interdum Gĕnitivūs pendĕt ā suppressā vōcĕ :

*Hectōris* Andrōmāchĕ (supplĕ *uxōr*).  
Ventum ěrāt ad *Vestae* (supplĕ *templum*).

b. Gĕnitivūs ĭtā stāt, ŭt supplĕrĭ possĭt.

*Indolĕs*, *indĭcĭum*,  
*Mūnūs* aut *offĭcĭum* :

Cūjusvĭshōmĭnĭs es t errārĕ.  
Est *ādōlescentĭs* mājōrĕs nātū vĕrĕrĭ.  
Tempōrĭ cĕdĕrĕ hābĕt ŭr *sāpĭentĭs*.

§ 128. II. Gĕnitivūs Quālitātĭs, cum ěpithĕtō :

*Inġĕnū* vultūs p ŭ ěr *inġĕnū*quĕ *pūdōris*.  
Claudiūs ěrāt *somnĭ brĕvĭssĭmĭ*.

a. Nōtentūr ellipticĭ Gĕnitivĭ, *parvĭ*, *mĭnōris*, *mĭnĭmĭ*, *magnĭ*, *plūrĭs*, *plūrĭmĭ*, *tantĭ*, *quantĭ*, *maxĭmĭ*, quĭbūs supplĕ *prĕtĭ* :

Vōluptātem virtūs *mĭnĭmĭ* faciť.  
ěmĭt hortōs *tantĭ* Pŷthĭūs vōlūt.

§ 129. III. *Intĕrest*, *rĕfert*, Gĕnitivum admittunt :

*Intĕrest omnĭum* rectĕ faciĕrĕ.  
*Rĕfert composĭtĭōnis* quae quĭbūs antĕpōnās.

a. ěādĕm prō Gĕnitivĭs Prōnōmĭnum ŭsurpant cāsūs Possessivōs *mĕā*, *tūā*, *sūā*, *nostrā*, *vestrā*, *cūjā*, cum *rĕ* congruĕntĕs :

ět *tūā* ět *mĕā* intĕrest tĕ vālĕrĕ.  
Quid *nostrā* ĭd rĕfert?

§ 130. IV. A. Gēnītvūs Rēi Distribūtae Partītvīs ad-  
jungītūr, quae, quantum licēt, Gēnītvī sūmunt gēnūs :

Ēlēphantō *bēlūārum* est nullā prūdentiōr.  
Hōmīnī ūnī *ānīmāntīum* luctūs est dātūs.  
Sullā centum vīgintī *sūōrum* āmisīt.  
Mājor *Nērōnum* mox grāvē praelīum commīsīt.  
*Gallōrum* fortissīmī sunt Belgae.  
Nēmō *mortālīum* omnībūs hōrīs sāpīt.  
*Piscīum* fēmīnae mājōrēs sunt quam mārēs.  
Sēquīmur tē, sanctē *dēōrum*.  
Hōc ad tē mīnīmē *omnīum* pertīnēt.

a. *Nostrūm, vestrūm*, Partītvā sēquuntūr :

Tē vēnīrē ūterquē *nostrūm* cūpīt.

§ 131. B. Gēnītvūs Rēi Dēmēnsae Vōcābūlā Quantītātīs  
ēt Neutrā Adjectīvā cōmītātūr :

Sātīs *ēlōquentīae, sāpientīae* pārūm est.  
Alīquīd pristīnī *rōbōrīs* conservāt.  
Quantum *nūmmōrum*, tantum *fīdēi* est.

### B. GENITIVUS OBJECTIVUS.

§ 132. I. Gēnītvūs objectīvē jungītūr Substantīvīs, Adjectīvīs, aut Partīcipīīs, quībūs transītīvā ovaedam vīs est, praesertim sī signīficant.

*Pērītīam, cūram, dēsīdērīum,*  
Vēl quīdquīd ērīt hīs contrārīum :

Insītūs est mentī *cognītīōnīs* ā mor.  
Diffīcīlīs est cūrā *rērum ālīenārum*.  
Tempūs ēdax *rērum* est.  
Corpūs pātīens *īnēdīae* fūīt.  
Conscīā mens *rectī* est.  
Impērītūs *mōrum* fūīt.  
Āvīdā est *pērīcūlī* virtūs.  
Ānīmūs fūīt *ālīenī* appētens, *sūi* prōfūsūs.

a. *Mēi, tūi, sūi, nostrī, vestrī*, objectīvē pōnuntūr; subjectīvē, *mēūs, tūūs, sūūs, nostēr, vestrēr* :

Nīcīās *tūā sūi* mēmōrīā dēlectātūr.

(a) Gēnītvūs Subjectīvūs īn Possessīvō lātens Gēnītvūm sībī congrūentem rēcīpīt :

Respublicā *mēā unīūs* ōpērā salvā ērāt.  
Āvēs fētūs ādultōs *sūae ipsōrum* fīdūcīae permittunt.

§ 133. II. Gēnitīvūs adjungītūr Verbīs ēt Adjectīvīs, quībūs signīficātūr

*Pōtentīā ēt impōtentīā,      Damnātīō, absōlūtīō,*  
*Crīmīnātīō, innōcentīā,      Mēmōriā ēt oblīvīō:*

- (1) Rōmānī *signōrum* pōtītī sunt. § 119 a.  
Irā est impōtens *sūi*.
- (2) Frāternī est *sanguīnis* insons.  
Rēūs est *injūriārum*.
- (3) Pētillīūs *furtī* absōlūtūs est.  
Condemnāmūs hāruspicēs *stultitiāe*.
- (4) Rēs adversae admōnent nōs *rēligiōnum*.  
Omnēs immēmōrem *bēnēficiī* odērunt.

a. Mēmīnī, rēmīniscōr, rēcordōr, oblīvīscōr, Gēnitīvum vėl Accūsātīvum admittunt:

Jūbet *mortis* tēmēmīnis sē Dēus.  
Dulcēs mōriens rēmīniscītūr *Argos*.

§ 134. III. *Pīgēt, pūdēt, paenītēt, taedēt* atquē *mīsērēt*, Impersōnālīā, Gēnitīvum cāpiunt cum Accūsātīvō:

Mīsērēt *tē aliōrum*: *tūi* nēc mīsērēt nēc pūdēt.  
*Ēos* partim *scēlērūm*, partim *ineptiūrūm* paenītēt.

§ 135. IV. *Mīsērēōr, mīsērescō* Gēnitīvum cāpiunt; *mīsērōr, commīsērōr*, Accūsātīvum:

Arcādīū, quaesō, mīsērescītē *rēgis*.  
*Sortem* mīsērātūr *iniquam*.

§ 136. V. Gēnitīvūs ā pōētīs libērē ūsurpātūr. Sēd *aegēr ānimī, ānimī pendēō*, sīmīliā, ētīam īn sōlūtā ōrātīōnē cōmpārent.

#### DE CASIBUS EXTRA SENTENTIAM.

§ 137. Vōcātīvūs extrā sententiām stāt vėl sīnē Interjectīōnē vėl cum Interjectīōnē: § 86.

Ōrō tē, *fīlī* (vėl *O fīlī*).

§ 138. Nōmīnātīvūs ēt Accūsātīvūs īn exclāmāndō ūsurpantūr vėl sīnē Interjectīōnē vėl cum Interjectīōnē:

(1) <i>Infandum!</i>		<i>Eccē novā turbā!</i>
(2) <i>Mē mīsērūm!</i>		<i>Ēn quattuōr ārās!</i>

§ 139. Itā Dātīvūs pōnītūr cum *hei! vae!*:

*Hei mīsērō mīhī!* | *Vae victīs!*

## DE VERBO INFINITO.

§ 140. I. Infinitivum stāt—

1. Substantivē, prō Nōminativō vėl Accūsativō :

- (1) *Invidērē* nōn cādīt in sāpiētem.  
Dulce et dēcōrum est prō patriā *mōrī*.  
(2) *Mōrī* nēmō sāpiens misērum dixērīt.

2. Praedicativē, in narrandō, prō Verbō Finitō :

Multi *sēquī*, *fūgērē*, *occidī*, *cāpī*.

3. Obliquē, cum Accūsativō Subjectī. § 94.

4. Prōlātā constructiōnē Verbī vėl Adjectivī :

Sōlent diū *cōgītārē* quī magnā vōlunt *gērērē*.  
Pātriae dicōris *essē* pāter.  
Lūdum insōlentem *lūdērē* pertīnax.

§ 141. II. Infinitivī Cāsūs sunt Gērundiā ēt Sūpinā.

1. Accūsativūs Gērundiī Praepōsitīōnībūs adjungitūr :

Ad bēnē *vīvendum* brēvē tempūs sātis est.

2. Gēnitivūs Gērundiī Substantivīs ēt Adjectivīs additūr :

Ars *scrībendī* discitūr. | Cūpidūs *audīendī* est.

3. Dātivūs Gērundiī Nōminībūs et Verbīs additūr :

Pār est *dissērendō*. | Dāt ōpēram *lēgendō*.

4. Ablativūs Gērundiī causae vėl mōdī est aut Praepōsitīōnī jungitūr :

*Fūgīendō* vincimūs. | *Dē pugnandō* dēlibērant.

5. Sūpinum in *um* Accūsativūs est post Verbā mōtūs :

*Lūsum* it Maecēnās, *dormitum* ēgō.

a. *Irī* cum Sūpinō efficit Infinitivum Fūtūrī Passivī :

Audīērāt nōn *dātum irī* filiō uxōrem sūō.

6. Sūpinum in *ū* prō Ablativō Respectūs est :

Foedum *dictū* est. | Nēfās *vīsū* est.

§ 142. III. Infinitivum, cum Gērundiō, Participiīs, ēt Sūpinō in *um*, ēōsdem cāsūs rēgīt ac Verbum Finitum :

Cūpiō sātisfācērē *rēipublicae*.  
Cūpidūs sum sātisfāciendī *rēipublicae*.  
Ausi omnēs immānē *nēfās ausōquē* pōtītī.  
Ast ēgō nōn Graiūs servitum *mātribūs* ībō.

§ 143. În Gěrundīis Transītivīs ūsītātīōr est Attractīō Gěrundīvā; cūjūs constructīōnis rēgūlă est haecce :

Trăhītūr Objectum în Gěrundī cāsum, Gěrundīum în nūmērurum ęt gēnūs Objectī :

Brūtūs în *libērandā pātrīā* est interfectūs.

Hī septemvīrī fūērunt *āgrīs dīvidendīs*.

§ 144. IV. 1. Nēcēsītātem signīficāt Gěrundīvā constructīō impersōnālīs, în Verbīs pōtissīmum intransītivīs :

*Bībendum est.*

| *Ēundum ērīt.*

a. Huic addī pōtest Dātīvūs, rārīūs Ablātīvūs cum *ā*, *ab* :

*Bībendum est nōbīs.* | *Vōbīs ęundum ērīt.*

b. Țt sī quis āliūs cāsūs *ā* Verbō rēgītūr :

*Cīvībūs est ā vōbīs consūlendum.*

Sūō cuiquē *jūdicīō* est ūtendum.

Eudoxūs ōpīnātūr *Chaldaeis* mīnimē essē crēdendum.

2. Nēcēsītātem signīficāt attribūtīvā constructīō Gěrundīvī, în Verbīs transītivīs :

Dēūs ęt *dīlīgendus* est nōbīs ęt *tīmendūs*.

*Nōn tangendă rătēs* transīliunt vādă.

## DE PRONOMINIBUS.

§ 145. *Sē*, *sūūs*, Rēflexīvā Prōnōmīnă, rēfēruntūr ād sentētiāe princīpālīs Subjectum, mōdō tertīae persōnae sīt :

Sentīt ānimūs *sē* vī *sūā* mōvērī.

a. Rēflexīvā ād Objectum rēferrī possunt, sī ęă rēlātīō nīhīl hăbēt ambīgūi :

Scīpīōnem impellit ostentātīō *sūi*.

Apībūs fructum rostītūō *sūum*.

Mors *sūā* quemquē mănet.

## DE PARTICULIS NONNULLIS.

§ 146. Multae Conjunctīōnēs sīmīliă sīmīlibūs annectunt

Mīrătūr portās strēpītumque et strătă vīarum.

Virtūs nec ęrīpī nec surrīpī pōtest.

Nēmīnem săpīentīōrem pūtō quam Sōcrātem.

Omnē solum fortī pătria est, ut piscībūs acqur.

§ 147. *Nē* prōhibītīvā cum Impērātīvō Mōdō vėl cum Con-  
junctīvō ūsurpātūr: *nēdum, ūtīnam, Ō sī, ūt* prō ūtīnam  
cum Coniunctīvō:

*Nē* quā mēis estō dictīs mōrā.

*Nē* culpam in mē contūlērīs.

*Neu* dēsint ēpūlis rōsae.

Mortālīā factā pērībunt,

*Nēdum* sermōnum stēt hōnōs et grātīā vīvax

*Ūtīnam* mīnūs vītāe cūpīdī fūissēmūs.

*Ō si* urnam argenti fors quae mīhī monstrēt.

*Ūt* illum dī dēaequē perdant.

## COMPENDIUM REGULARUM DE SUBJUNCTIVO.

§ 148. Mōdūs Coniunctīvūs vārīis sensībūs *pūrē* ūsur-  
pātūr: quum *subjungītūr* altērī Verbō, Subiunctīvūs appel-  
lātūr.

§ 149. Prōnōmīnā ēt Partīcūlae, quae obliquē interrōgant,  
Subiunctīvum postūlant:

Ipsē quis *sīt*, ūtrum *sīt*, an nōn *sīt*, id quōquē nescit.

Tālīa sunt:

*Quantūs, ūter, quālis, quis, quot, quōtūs, unde, ūbī, quāndō,*

*Cūr, quōtīēs, quārē, quam, quōmōdō, num, nē, ūt, an, ūtrum.*

§ 150. Rēlātīvum *quī*, cum Partīcūlis sūis, *undē, ūbī*,  
cētērīs, simplicī sensū cāpit Indīcātīvum: sī continētūr in eō  
*quum, quamvis, ūt*, vėl *tālīs ūt*, Subiunctīvum:

Mīsērēt tūi mē, quī hunc *fāciās* inīmīcum tībī.

Littērās mīsī quībūs ēt *plācārem* eūm ēt *mōnērem*.

Quīs est quī nōn *ōdērīt* prōtervam pūērītīam?

Dignā rēs est ūbī nervōs *intendās*.

§ 151. Rēlātīvum vėl Coniunctiō, sī sūbordinātūr ōrātīōnī  
obliquae vėl rē vėl pōtestatē, Subiunctīvum postūlat:

Ennīūs nōn censēt lūgendam essē mortem, quam im-  
mortālītās *consēquātūr*.

Sōcrātēs accūsātūs est quōd *corrumpērēt* iūventūtem.

a. Coniunctīvō saepē sūbordinātūr Subiunctīvūs:

Clāmānt omnēs: praestārēt quōd *rēcēpissēt*.



§ 152. Conjunctionum Modos regentium Classēs sunt trēs.

I. Primā Classis est earum, quarum proprius est Subjunctivus:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>(1) CONSECUTIVA:<br/>         Ūt (<i>so that</i>)<br/>         Quin (<i>but that</i>)</p> <p>(2) FINALES:<br/>         Ūt (<i>in order that</i>)<br/>         Nē (<i>lest, that . . . not</i>)<br/>         Quō (<i>in order that</i>)<br/>         Quōminūs (<i>but that</i>)</p> <p>(3) CAUSALIS:<br/>         Quum (<i>since</i>)</p> | <p>(4) CONDITIONALES:<br/>         Dum<br/>         Mōdō<br/>         Dummodō } (<i>provided that</i>)</p> <p>(5) CONCESSIVAE:<br/>         Licēt<br/>         Quamvis } (<i>although</i>)<br/>         Ūt</p> <p>(6) COMPARATIVAE:<br/>         Tanquam<br/>         Vēlūt, ceu } (<i>as if</i>)<br/>         Quāsi, &amp;c.</p> |
|---|---|

II. Altērā Classis est earum quarum proprius est Indicativus, nisi subordinentur orationi obliquae vel re vel potestati:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>(1) CAUSALES:<br/>         Quōd, quā (<i>because</i>)<br/>         Quōniā (<i>since</i>)<br/>         Quādoquidem (<i>since</i>)<br/>         Siquidem (<i>inasmuch as</i>)</p> <p>(2) TEMPORALES:<br/>         Quādo, quum, ubi (<i>when</i>)<br/>         Ut (<i>when, since</i>)<br/>         Quōtiēs (<i>as often as</i>)</p> | <p>Simul (<i>as soon as</i>)<br/>         Post-quam (<i>after that</i>)<br/>         Dum<br/>         Dōnēc } (<i>whilst, as long as</i>)<br/>         Quōād</p> <p>(3) CONCESSIVAE:<br/>         Quamquam (<i>although, however</i>)<br/>         Ūtūt (<i>however</i>)</p> |
|--|--|

III. Tertīā Classis est earum, quas aut Indicativus sequitur aut Subjunctivus, prout res aut vera aut cogitata proponitur.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(1) TEMPORALES:<br/>         Dum, dōnēc, quōād (<i>until</i>)<br/>         Antē-quam } (<i>before that</i>)<br/>         Prius-quam</p> | <p>(2) CONDITIONALES ET CONCESSIVAE:<br/>         Sī (<i>if</i>)<br/>         Nisi (<i>unless</i>)<br/>         Etsi, etiāmsi, (<i>although, even if</i>)</p> |
|--|---|

§ 153. Idiōtismi sunt Lātīnī sērmōnīs:

(1) Quum (*when*) sequentē Subjunctivō Imperfectī vel Plūperfectī:

Zēnōnem, quum Athēnīs essem, audiēbam frēquentēr.  
 Dēcessit Agēsīlāus quum in portum vēnissēt.

(2) Dum (*whilst*) sęquentę Indicativō Praesentis, ętiam ĩn obliquā sũbordinatiōnę ęt dę rę praetęritā :

Quem ardōrem stũdii censętis fũissę ĩn Archimędę, qui,  
*dum* ĩn pulvęrę quaedam *dęscribit* attentius, nę patriam  
quidem captam esse sensęrit?

§ 154. Coniunctiō excidit ęliquandō :

Philosōphię servias oportet (supplę *ut*).

Quaeram justum sit necnę pōema (supplę *utrum*).

Partem ępęre ĩn tantō, sinęret dōlor, ĩcare, hębęres (supplę *si*).

§ 155. Dę Consęcũtiōnę Tempōrum ęę est ręgũlę, ęt Prĩmarię Prĩmariis sũbordinentũr, Histōricę Histōricis.

Exemplę ex Syntaxi rępętantũr.

#### REGULAE SUBSIDIARIAE DE CONGRUENTIA.

§ 156. (1) Adiectivę prō Substantivis pōnuntũr :

*Multę paupęri dęsunt, ęvęrō omnĩa.*

(2) Infinitivę prō Substantivis pōnuntũr :

*Vivęrę est vęlęrę.*

(3) Clausũlae prō Substantivis pōnuntũr :

*Crędibilę est omnĩa consilio fieri.*

§ 157. Impersōnalis Verbĩ Nōminativũs nōn exstęt, nisi si Infinitivum vęl Clausũlę est :

Pũdęt ęum facti (i. e. *pũdōr* pũdęt).

Quid ęgitũr? Stętũr (i. e. *stętiō* fit).

Tędęt ęadem *audirę* millies.

Magnĩ intęrest *ut tę vidęam.*

§ 158. Vox intelligitũr ęmissę pęr Ellipsin :

Nihil bōnum nisi quōd hōnestum (bis intelligę *est*).

Perfundor gęlidę (intelligę *ęquę*).

§ 159. Congręntię vęriętũr pęr Attractiōnem :

Nōn omnis error stultitię est *dicendę*.

Thębae, *quod* Boeōtię capũt est.

§ 160. Congręntię cum sensũ fit pęr Sýnęsin, praesertim ępũd pōetas :

*Sũbęunt Tęgęaeę jũventũs . . . auxiliō tardę.*

Ubi est *is* scęlũs, qui mę perdidit?

## PROSODIAE COMPENDIUM.

§ 161. Dē Syllābārum Quantitātē dissērit,  
Et dē Mētrōrum lēgibus, Prōsōdīa.



### DE SYLLABARUM QUANTITATE.

#### REGULAE QUANTITATIS GENERALES.

- § 162. 1. Omnis Diphthongus contractāquē Syllābā longa est.  
2. Dant Dērivātis prōpriūm Primāriā tempus.  
3. Praevīā vōcālī vōcālis corrīpiētur.  
4. Vōcālis fit longā sitū, cui consōnā substat  
Altērā post ūnam; ut *tristis*: seu vōcē in ēādē  
*J* sūbit, *x*, aut *z*; sic *Ājāx*, *āxis*, *Āmāzōn*.  
a. Vōcālis dūbīa est, quamvis brēvis ipsā sūā vī,  
Quam sēquītur, līquidā subjunctā, consōnā mūta:  
Sic rectē *lūgūbrē* mēlos vel *lūgūbrē* dīcēs.  
b. *N* post *g* longam dat sempēr: ut *agnūs* ēt *ignīs*.  
Nec mīnūs *m* post *g*; *tēgmen* quod monstrāt ēt *āgmen*.

#### DE QUANTITATE SYLLABARUM FINALIUM.

- § 163. 1. Plērāquē prōducēs Mōnōsyllābā, quālīā *mē*, *vēr*.  
2. Prōducuntūr in *A*; *frustrā*, *contrā*quē, *pārā*quē.  
a. Accūsātīvōs et cāsūs excīpē Rectōs:  
*Carmīnā Mūsā* cānit; rēsōnant *Āmāryllidā* silvae.  
3. *E* brēvis in fīne est: sic *lēgē*, *tīmētē*, *cārērē*.  
4. Prōducuntūr in *I*: *dīcī*, *plēbī*que, *dōlī*que.  
5. Prōducuntūr in *O*: *virgō*, *multō*quē, *juvō*que.  
6. Prōducuntūr in *Ū*: sic *tū*, *dictū*quē, *dūū*que.  
7. *Y* brēvis in fīne est: sic dant *chēly*, *Tīphy*, pōetae.  
8. In *C* prōducuntūr, ut *illīc* (excīpē *donēc*).  
9. Corrīpē in *L*, *D*, *T*: sic *Hannībāl*, *illūd*, *āmāvīt*.  
10. *N* brēvis in fīne est: sunt testēs *Īlīōn*, *āgmēn*.

11. *R* brēvis in fine est: ceu *calcār, āmābitūr, Hectōr*.
12. Prōdūcuntūr in *As*: ut *terrās* atquē *Mēnalcās*.
13. Prōdūcuntūr in *Ēs*, ut *sēdēs* atquē *vīdērēs*.
14. *Is* brēvis in fine est: ceu *dīcērīs, ūlīlīs, ensīs*.
- a. Obliqū cāsūs plūrālēs excipiuntur,  
 Ut *terrīs, vobīs*; etiā persōnā sēcunda  
 In primō nūmērō Quartae Praesentīs, ūt *audīs*:  
 Composita ā *vīs, sīs*: *mālīs, nolīsque, vēlīsque*.
15. Prōdūcuntūr in *Ōs*: ut *ventōs* atquē *sācerdōs*.
16. *Us* brēvis in fine est: testēs *ōlūs, intūs, āmāmūs*.
- a. Hinc Quartae cāsūs contractōs excipe, ūt *artūs*:  
 Et queis crescentis longa est pēnultimā cāsūs,  
 Ut *tebūs incūsque, jūventūs* atquē *sēnectūs*.
17. *Ys* brēvis in fine est: testēs *chēlīs, Ōthrīs, Ērīnīs*.
- Obs.* Mōs rēgīt Auctōrum tempus, sī rēgūlā dēfit.

## DE METRORUM LEGIBUS.

### DEFINITIONES.

- § 164. Syllābā longā brēvī subjectā vōcātūr *Īambus* . . ∪ -  
 Quod sī longā brēvī praecesserit, illē *Trōchēus* . - ∪  
 Spondēus binīs fertur consistērē longīs . . . . . - -  
 Dactylūs efficitur longā brēvibusquē dūābus . . - ∪ ∪

### DE SCANSIONE ET FIGURIS SCANSIONIS.

- § 165. 1. Scansio, | quam vāri|ā con|cinnant | artē Fi|gūrae,  
 Distribū|it Ver|sum | prō rāti|ōnē Pē|dum.
2. A. Vōcālem ēlidet Sŷnāloepha in limītē vōcis,  
 Sī Vōcālīs ērit subnexae in limīnē vōcis;  
 ‘*Phyllid’ ām’ | ant’ āl|ās*.  
 (prō *Phyllidā, āmō, antē*.)
3. B. Ecthlipsis Vōcālem atquē *m* dē limītē trūdet,  
 Sī Vōcālīs ērit subnexae in limīnē vōcis;  
 ‘*Ō cū|rās hōmīn’ | Ō quant’ | est in | rēbūs in’āne*.  
 (prō *hōmīnum, quantum*.)
- a. Extrēma in dūbīs censētur syllābā versūs.

## § 166. VERSUS MEMORIALES DE VOCUM DIFFERENTIA.

- I. In silvīs *ācēr* est : *ēquūs ācēr* Ōlympiā vincit.  
*Vōcē cānēs* ; *dūc ējā cānēs*, nisi tempōrā *cānēs*.  
*Clāvā* fērit : *clāvus* firmat ; *clāvisque* rēclūdit.  
 Ut plācēās *cōmītī*, mōrēs *cōmēs* indūē *cōmēs*.  
*Cōmoedi scēnam*, *cōmēdōnēs* quaeritē *cēnam*.  
*Consulē* doctōrēs ; sic tū *tībī* *consulīs* ipsī.  
 Bellandī *cūpīdō* nōcūit sūā saepē *cūpīdō*.  
 Carminā *dīcuntur*, Dōminō dum templā *dīcantur*.  
 Solvērē *diffīdit*, nōdum quī *diffīdit* ense.  
 Uxōrem *dūcit* vir ; *nūbit* sponsā mārītō.  
*Ēdūcāt* hic cātūlōs, ut mox *ēdūcāt* in āprōs.  
 Sī tībī non est *aes*, *ēs* inops, et pinguā nōn *ēs*.  
 Fallit saepē *frētum* plācidō nīmīs aequōrē *frētum*.  
 Sōl nūbēs *fūgāt*, et *fūgīt* irrēpārābilē tempus.  
 Per quod quis peccat, pēr *īdem* mox plectītūr *īdem*  
 Difficīlis *lābōr* est, cūjus sub pondērē *lābor*.  
 Frons pūeri est *lēvis*, *lēvis* autem linguā pūellae.  
 In campīs *lēpōrēs*, in librīs quaerē *lēpōrēs*.  
 Nōn *licēt* assē *mīhī*, quī *mē* nōn assē *licētur*.  
*Mālo* ēgō *mālā* mēā bōnā quam *mālā* frangērē *mālū*.  
*Merx* vēnit, *mercesque* vēnit quaesitā *lābōre*.  
*Mulcēt* āmans plācidam, dum *mulget*, Silvīā vaccam.  
 Fēcērīs officiūm, *mīsērīs* sī *mīsērīs* aera.  
*Nūtērē*, parvē pūer, cūpiēs quicumquē *nūtēre*.  
*Oblītā* quae fūcō rūbēt, est *oblītā* dēcōrī.  
*Occīdīt* illē dōlō turpī, quem *occīdīt* āmicus.  
*Ōs* (*ōris*) *mandat*, sēd *ōs* (*ossis*) *mandītūr* ōre.  
 Uxōris *pārēre* et *pārērē*, *pārārē* mārītī est.  
*Pārentēs* pūerī faciunt gaudērē *pārentēs*.  
 Lūdē *pīlā* : *pīlum* torquētur : *pīlā* cōlumna est.  
 Prō rēti et rēgionē *plāga* est ; prō verbērē *plāga*.  
 Sunt cīvēs urbis *pōpūlus* ; sed *pōpūlus* arbor.  
*Prōrā* prīor, *puppis* pars postēra, āt imā *cārīna*.  
 Spondet *vas* (*vādīs*), at *vās* (*vāsīs*) continēt escam.  
*Vas* cāpūt, at nummōs tantum *praes* praestāt āmicē.  
 Sī citūs irē *vēlis*, *vēlis* ōpūs omnībūs ūti est.

- II. *Fidē*, sēd antē *vidē* : quī *fīdit*, nec *hēnē vidit*,  
 Fallitūr : ipsē *vidē* nē cāpiārē *fīdē*.  
*Consortēs* fortūna ēādem, *sōciōs* lābōr idem,  
 Ūnum *collēgās* efficit officiūm :  
 At cārōs faciunt schōlā, lūdus, mensā, *sōdālēs* ;  
 Sulcūs āgrī *lira* est : dat *lŷrā* tactā mōdōs.  
 Nē sit *sēcūrus*, quī nōn est *tūtūs* āb hoste ;  
 Ad flūmen *rīpās*, ad mārē *litūs* hābēs.  
 Sunt aetātē *sēnēs* ; *vētērēs* vixērē priōrēs :  
 Quod nōn est *sīmūlō* *dissīmūlō*quē quōd est.  
 Annē *nōvī* quīd hābēs ? Ālium pētē : nīl ēgō *nōvī*.  
 Quod mīnimē *rēfert* garrūlūs illē *rēfert*.  
 Sī quā fortē *sēdēs*, atque est tībī commōdā *sēdēs*,  
 Illā *sēdē* *sēdē* ; nec mīhī *cēdē* lōcō.

(ENGLISH OF NOUNS, § 25—30.)

[§ 25.] (1) *Silver, gold, iron, plebeian-order, justice, spring, time, death, blood, childhood.* (2) *Ghosts, children, household-gods, riches, cradle, trifles, thanks, arms, functions, huts, feast of Flora.*

[§ 26.] (5) *Artificer, worker, guest, seer, new-comer, witness, citizen, inhabitant, parent, priest (or priestess), guardian, avenger, young man (or woman), infant, informer, judge, heir, companion, guide, chief, burgess, husband (or wife), hostage, bird, interpreter, author, exile, ox (or cow), deer, mole, tiger, crane, dog, snake, serpent, swine.*

[§ 28.] *Paunch, bear-constellation, canvas, distaff, ground, vine-leaf, winnowing-fan, pear-tree, sapphire, sea, poison, common-folk.*

[§ 29.] I. (1) *Spade, order, pirate, hinge, margin.* (2) *Weevil, bat, poniard, staff, butterfly, ternion, sice.* (3) *Echo, flesh.* (4) *Tree, surface (or sea), marble (or sea), heart.* (5) *Whetstone, dowry.* (6) *Osier, maple, stripe, spring, truffle, teat (or fertility), carcase, pepper, journey, poppy.* (7) *Fetter, mat, reward, sheaf, rest, crop, copper.* II. (1) *River, axle, stalk, hill, hind-leg, hair, bundle, bellows, bludgeon, fire, circle (or world), sword, bread, fish, doorpost, month, brand, talon, canal, lever, worm, birthday, stone, blood, cucumber, dust, nets, ghosts, dormouse.* (2) *Path, thorn, rope, end, collar, cinder.* (3) *Adamant, elephant, male, giant, as, bail, vessel.* (4) *Shears, law, death, furniture, pumice, tile, bolt, basalt, sorrel.* (5) *Arch, phoenix, cup.* (6) *Fountain, mountain, iron, dropsy, griffin, bridge, cable, torrent, tooth, client, one-third-part, trident, west, east.* (7) *Boar-pig, scimeter.* III. (1) *Bran, turtle-dove, vulture, thief.* (2) *Slavery, youth, virtue, safety, old-age, land, anvil, marsh.* (3) *Beast.* (4) *Hare, mouse.* (5) *Mullet, consul, salt, sun, boxer.* (6) *Kidney, spleen, comb, dolphin, woodcock.* (7) *Gorgon, linen, kingfisher.*

[§ 30.] *Tribe, needle, porch, house, daughter-in-law, mother-in-law, old-woman, Ides, hand.*

## FIRST MEMORIAL SYNTAX.

## ON AGREEMENT.

## THE FOUR GENERAL RULES.

[§ 88.] I. A Verb Finite agrees with the Nominative of its Subject in Number and Person :

Māgister dōcēt.  
*The master teaches.*

Lībrī lēguntūr.  
*Books are read.*

Tū dōcēs : nōs discimūs.  
*Thou teachest : we learn.*

Discērē est ūtilē.  
*To learn is useful.*

[§ 89.] II. An Adjective agrees in Gender, Number, and Case with that to which it is in attribution :

Vīr bōnūs illē bōnam hanc uxōrem hābēt.  
*That good man has this good wife.*

Hīrundō pullīs sūis orbātā quērītūr.  
*The swallow bereft of its young complains.*

Cārī sunt pārentēs ; cārā est pātriā.  
*Dear are parents, dear is country.*

Pūērī discendō fiunt doctī.  
*Boys by learning become learned.*

[§ 90.] III. A Substantive agrees in Case with that to which it is in apposition :

Nōs pūērī pātrē Lollīum imitābimūr.  
*We boys will imitate our father Lollius.*

Effōdiuntūr ōpēs, irritāmentā mālōrum,  
*Riches are dug out, incentives of evil.*

Spēs est expectātiō bōnī.  
*Hope is the expectation of good.*

Syllābā longā brēvī subjectā vocātūr Īmbus.  
*A long syllable following a short is called Iambus.*

[§ 91.] IV. A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person; but in Case belongs to its own clause:

Dēum vēnērāmūr quī nōs creāvīt.

*We worship God, who created us.*

Āmicūs est, quem āmāmūs, ā quō āmāmūr.

*A friend is one whom we love, by whom we are loved.*

Āmō tē, mātēr, quae mē āmās.

*I love you, mother, who love me.*

#### ON THE COMPOSITE SUBJECT.

[§ 92.] With a Composite Subject Plural words agree:

Vēnēnō absumptī sunt Hannībāl ēt Phīlōpoemēn.

*Hannibal and Philopoemen were cut off by poison.*

1. If the Persons differ, Verbs agree with the Prior Person:\*

Sī tū ēt Tullīā vālētīs, ēgō ēt Cīcērō vālēmūs.

*If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well.*

2. When the Genders differ, Adjectives agree with the Masculine rather than with the Feminine:

Pātēr mīhī ēt mātēr mortūī sunt.

*My father and mother are dead.*

a. If the things are lifeless, the Attributes are often Neuter:

Dīvītiāe, dēcūs, glōriā ĩn očūlīs sītā sunt.

*Riches, honour, glory, are placed before our eyes.*

#### ON CASES.

##### ON THE CASES OF SUBJECT AND COMPLEMENT.

[§ 93.] 1. The Subject of a Finite Verb is a Nominative:

Annī fūgīunt.

*Years flee.*

(2) The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative:

Constāt annōs fūgērē.

*It is agreed that years flee.*

Scīmūs annōs fūgērē.

*We know that years flee.*

[§ 94.] Copulative Verbs, whether Finite or Infinitive, generally have a Complement agreeing with the Subject:

Vītā est somnūm.

*Life is a dream.*

Vītā dīcītūr essē somnūm.

*Life is said to be a dream.*

Nēmō nascītūr sāpīens.

*Nobody is born wise.*

Nēmō pōtest nascī sāpīens.

*Nobody can be born wise.*

\* The First Person is considered Prior to the Second, the Second to the Third.



Aiunt *vītam* esse *somnium*.  
*They say that life is a dream.*

Constāt *nēmīnem* nascī *sāpientem*.  
*It is agreed that nobody is born wise.*

a. The Construction of Accusative with Infinitive is called Oblique (Indirect) Enunciation.

---

### ON THE ACCUSATIVE.

[§ 95.] The Accusative is the Case of the Nearer Object. It has also the power of limiting.

#### I. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE OBJECT.

[§ 96.] Transitive Verbs govern an Accusative of the Object:

Mātēr ālit *pullōs*.  
*The mother nourishes the young ones.*

In *primis* vĕnĕrārĕ *Dĕum*.  
*In the first place worship God.*

[§ 97.] Intransitive Verbs take an Accusative of kindred meaning:

Dūram servīt <i>servitūtem</i> .		Claudius ālĕam lūsīt.
<i>He serves a hard slavery.</i>		<i>Claudius played hazard.</i>

[§ 98.] Some Verbs, especially those of *asking* and *teaching*, admit two Accusatives, one of the Thing, the other of the Person:

Nūquam dīvītās dĕōs rōgāvi.  
*Never asked I of the gods riches.*

Quīd nunc tĕ littĕrās dōcĕam?  
*Why now should I teach you letters?*

[§ 99.] Factitive Verbs, that is, of *making*, *calling*, *thinking*, and the like, have two Accusatives, one of the Object, the other of the Complement:

Tĕ fācīmus, Fortūnā, dĕam.  
*We make thee, Fortune, a goddess.*

Rōmulus urbem sūam Rōmam vōcāvīt.  
*Romulus called his city Rome.*

## II. THE ACCUSATIVE OF LIMITATION.

[§ 100.] The Accusative of Respect is joined to Verbs and Adjectives, especially in poetry :

Trēmīt <i>artūs.</i>		Nūdae sunt <i>lācertōs.</i>
<i>He trembles in his limbs.</i>		<i>They are bare as to the arms.</i>

[§ 101.] The Place, *Whither* one goes, is put in the Accusative ; and without a Preposition, if it is either the name of a town, or *dōmūs* (*home*), *rūs* (*country*) :

Rēgūlūs *Carthāgīnem* rēdiīt.  
*Regulus returned to Carthage.*  
 Vōs ītē *dōmum* : ēgō *rūs* ībō.  
*Go ye home : I will go into the country.*

[§ 102.] (1) The Duration of Time is put in the Accusative :

Pēriclēs *quādrāgintā annōs* praefūit *Āthēnīs.*  
*Pericles led Athens forty years.*

(2) The Measure of Space is put in the Accusative :

Ērant mūrī *Bābylōnīs dūcēnōs pēdēs* altī.  
*The walls of Babylon were two hundred feet high.*

[§ 103.] Many Prepositions govern an Accusative Case (see the list, § 83).

## ON THE DATIVE.

[§ 104.] The Dative is the Case of the Recipient or Remoter Object.

§ 105. I. Words which carry their meaning over to a Remoter Object are called Trajective, and include many Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs, more rarely Substantives, by which is implied (1) Nearness or (2) Demonstration, (3) Gratification or (4) Dominion ; and any notion contrary to these.

§ 106. Trajective Words take a Dative when the meanings implied are

(1) Nearness and its contraries :

Est *fīnītīmūs orātōrī* pōētā.  
*A poet is near akin to an orator.*  
 Nīl fūit unquam sic impār *sībī.*  
*Nothing was ever so unequal to itself.*  
 Congrūentēr *nātūrae* vīvendum est.  
*We should live agreeably to nature.*

*Praesentiā confēr praelērītīs.*

*Compare present things with past.*

*Nec tāmēn ignōrat quid distent aerā lūpīnis.*

*And yet he is not ignorant how coins differ from lupins.*

(2) Demonstration and its contraries:

*Dīc mīhī, Dāmoetā, cūjum pēcūs?*

*Tell me, Damoetas, whose flock (is this)?*

*Anguīs Sullae appārūit immōlantī.*

*A snake appeared to Sulla while sacrificing.*

*Haud cuiquam in dūbīō ērāt bellum immīnērē.*

*It was not doubtful to any one that war was imminent.*

(3) Gratification and its contraries:

*Pātrīae sīt idōnēūs, ūtilīs āgrīs.*

*Let him be serviceable to his country, useful to the lands.*

*Turbā grāvis pācī plācīdaeque īnīmicā quīētī.*

*A crowd oppressive to peace and unfriendly to calm rest.*

*Quōd ālīī dōnāt sībī dētrāhīt.*

*What he gives to another, he withdraws from himself.*

*Lūcem reddē tūae, dux bōnē, pātrīae.*

*Restore light to thy country, good chief.*

*Nōbīs spondet fortūnā sālūtem.*

*Fortune guarantees safety to us.*

*Nē lībēāt tībī quod nēmīnī līcēt.*

*Let not (that) please thee which is lawful to no man.*

*Parcē pīō gēnērī.*

*Spare a pious race.*

*Succensērē nēfās pātrīae.*

*It is impious to be wroth with one's country.*

*Rēsistendum est appētītībūs.*

*We should resist our passions.*

(4) Dominion and its contraries:

*Sāpiens, sībī qui impērīōsus.*

*The wise man (is he) who (is) lord over himself.*

*Omnībūs supplex est.*

*He is suppliant to all.*

*Impērāt aut servit collectā pēcūniā cuique.*

*Amassed money sways or serves every man.*

*Mundūs Dēō pārēt, et huic ōboediunt mārīā terraequē.*

*The universe obeys God, and seas and lands harken to Him.*

a. Among Trajective words are many Verbs compounded with Particles, such as *bēnē* (well), *mālē* (ill), *sātīs* (enough),

rē, ād, antē, con, in, intēr, dē, ōb, sūb, sūpēr, post, and prae:

*Cētērīs sātisfāciō sempēr, mīhī nunquam.*  
*I satisfy others always, myself never.*

*Sīcīliā quondam Ītālīae ādhaesīt.*  
*Sicily once was attached to Italy.*

*Gīgantēs bellum dīs intūlērunt.*  
*The giants waged war on the gods.*

*Ānātum ōvā gallīnīs suppōnīmūs.*  
*We place eggs of ducks under hens.*

§ 107. II. A Dative can be added anywhere with a certain notion of Advantage or Disadvantage:

*Esto, ut nunc multī, dīves tībī, paupēr āmīcīs.*  
*Be, as many are now, rich for thyself, poor for friends.*

*Nūmā virgīnēs Vestae lēgīt.*  
*Numa chose virgins for Vesta.*

*Vēnūs nupsīt Vulcānō.*  
*Venus wedded Vulcan (lit. veiled herself for Vulcan).*

*Phīlōsōphīae sempēr vācō.*  
*I always am at leisure for philosophy.*

a. Refer here the Dative of the Pronoun, which is called the Ethic Dative:

*Quid mīhī Celsūs āgit?*  
*What (is) my Celsus doing?*

b. Sum with its compounds, except possum, takes a Dative:

*Sum tībī Mercūriūs.*  
*I am to thee Mercury.*

*Vir mīhī sempēr ābest.*  
*My husband is always absent from me.*

c. Est, sunt, with a Dative, often imply having:

*Est hōmīnī cum Dēō sīmīlītūdō.*  
*Man has a resemblance to God.*

*Sunt nōbīs mītiā pōma.*  
*We have mellow apples.*

d. The same Dative is joined to Participles and Participials of the Passive Voice, especially to Gerundives:

*Magnus cīvīs ōbīt et formīdātūs Ōthōnī.*  
*A great citizen is dead, and one dreaded by Otho.*

*Multīs illē bōnīs flēbīlīs occīdīt.*  
*He died a cause of weeping to many good men.*

*Lēgendae sunt pūērīs Aesōpī fābūlae.*  
*The fables of Æsop are to be read by boys.*

§ 108. III. A Dative of the Purpose is used as a Complement, a Dative of the Recipient being often added :

Nimĭā fiduciā cālāmītātī sōlēt essĕ.

*Too much confidence is wont to be a calamity.*

Exītio est āvidum mārĕ nauīs.

*The greedy sea is a destruction to sailors.*

§ 109. IV. A Dative of the Complement is used by Attraction, especially in expressions of naming:

Lĭcūt Thēmīstōclī essĕ ōtĭōsō.

*It was lawful for Themistocles to be at leisure.*

Huic ěgō dĩĕī nōmĕn Trĭnummō fācĭam.

*To this day I will give the name Trinummus.*

#### ON THE ABLATIVE.

[§ 110.] The Ablative is the Case of circumstances which attend action, and limit it adverbially. It defines also Time and Place.

[§ 111.] I. Ablative of Cause :

Ōdĕrunt peccārĕ bōnī virtūtīs āmōre.

*The good hate to sin from love of virtue.*

Coeptīs immānĭbūs effĕrā Dīdō.

*Dido wild with horrid purposes.*

[§ 112.] II. Ablative of the Instrument :

Hī jācūtīs, illī certant dĕfendĕrĕ saxīs.

*These strive to defend with javelins, those with stones.*

[§ 113.] III. Ablative of Manner :

Injūrĭā fĭt dūōbūs mōdīs, aut vī aut fraudĕ.

*Wrong is done in two manners, either by force or by fraud.*

[§ 114.] IV. Ablative of Condition :

Pācĕ tūā cum Thāīdĕ collōquār.

*With your leave I will converse with Thais.*

Hōmō mĕā sententiā prūdētissĭmūs est.

*He is a man in my opinion very prudent.*

[§ 115.] V. Ablative of Quality, with Epithet :

Quā faciĕ fūit, cui dĕdistī symbōlum?

*Of what aspect was he to whom you gave the ticket?*

Sĕnex prōmissā barbā, horrentī cāpillō.

*An old man with long beard and rough hair.*

## [§ 116.] VI. Ablative of Respect :

Angör *ānimō*.*I am distressed in mind.*Enniūs *ingēniō* maximūs, *artē* rūdis.*Ennius, mighty in genius, in art (is) rude.*

## [§ 117.] VII. Ablative of Price :

Egō *spem* *prētiō* nōn *ēmō*.*I buy not hope at a cost.*Quōd nōn *ōpūs* est, *assē* *cārum* est.*What is not needful is dear at a penny.*

## [§ 118.] VIII. Ablative of Measure :

Longum *sesquipedē*, *lātum* *pedē* est.*It is a foot and a half long, a foot wide.*Sōl *multis* *partibus* *mājōr* est quam *lūnā*.*The sun is many times larger than the moon.*Tantō *peſsimūs* omnium *pōētā*,Quantō tu *optimūs* omnium *pātrōnūs*.*By so much the worst poet of all,**As you (are) the best patron of all.*

## [§ 119.] IX. Ablative of Matter :

Cībūs *ēorum* *lactē*, *cāsēō*, *carnē* *constāt*.*Their food consists of milk, cheese, and flesh.*

a. These words govern an Ablative: (1) The Verbs *fungōr* (perform), *frūōr* (enjoy), *ūtōr* (use), *vescōr* (eat), *pōtiōr* (get possession of), *dignōr* (deem worthy). (2) The Adjectives *dignūs* (worthy), *indignūs* (unworthy), *contentūs* (content), *frētūs* (relying), *praeditūs* (endued). (3) The Substantives *ōpūs* (need), *ūsūs* (use) :

(1) *Fungar* *vicē* *cōtis*.*I will perform the function of a whetstone.**Hannibāl, cum victōriā* *possēt* *ūtī*, *frūi* *mālūt*.*Hannibal, when he might have used his victory, preferred to enjoy it.**Rex impiūs* *aurō* *vī* *pōtitur*. § 133.*The impious king gets possession of the gold by force.*(2) *Dignum* *laudē* *vīrum* *Mūsā* *vētāt* *mōrī*.*A man worthy of praise the Muse forbids to die.*(3) *Ūbī* *rēs* *adsunt*, *quid* *ōpūs* *est* *verbīs*?*When things are present, what need is there of words?**Ūsūs* *est* *filīō* *vīginti* *minīs*.*My son needs twenty minas.*

b. Most Adjectives and Verbs of *abounding* or *wanting*, *enriching* or *depriving*, take an Ablative; many also a Genitive.

Amōr ēt mellē ēt fellē est fēcundissimūš.  
*Love is very fruitful both in honey and gall.*

Nunquam ānimūš mōtū vācūūš est.  
*The mind is never void of motion.*

Vīs consīli expers mōlē rūit sūā.  
*Force devoid of counsel falls by its own weight.*

Mancīpīš lōcūplēs ēgēt aeris Cappādōcum rex.  
*The king of the Cappadocians, rich in slaves, lacks coin.*

Vācārē culpā maxīmum est sōlāciūm.  
*To be free from blame is a very great comfort.*

§ [120.] X. The Ablative of Time answers the questions: *When? Within what time? How long before or after?*

Hīēmē omniā bellā conquiescunt.  
*In winter all wars rest.*

Quidquīd est bīdūō scīemūš.  
*Whatever there is we shall know in two days.*

Hōmērūš annīš multīš fūit antē Rōmūlum.  
*Homer was many years before Romulus.*

§ [121.] XI. A. The Ablative of Place is put without a Preposition, when the question is, *By what road?*

Ībam fortē Vīā Sācrā.  
*I was going by chance on the Sacred Road.*

B. The Ablative is often without a Preposition when the question is, *Where?* especially if it is the name of a town, or if it stands with an Epithet.

Philippūš Nēāpōlī est, Lentūlūš Pūtēōlīš.  
*Philippus is at Naples, Lentulus at Puteoli.*

Tābernae tōtā urbē clauduntūr.  
*The shops are closed in the whole city.*

a. Singular names of towns of the first and second Declension define the place of station by cases in *ae*, *i*:

Quid Rōmae faciā?	Īs hābitāt Mīlētī.
What can I do at Rome?	He dwells at Miletus.

b. Like these are hūmī (*on the ground*), dōmī (*at home*), bellī, milītiāe (*at the wars*), rūrī (*in the country*):

Caesārīš virtūš dōmī milītiāequē cognītā est.  
*Caesar's virtue was known at home and at the wars.*

C. The Ablative of a town is without a Preposition, when the question is, *Whence?*

Dēmārātūs fūgīt Cōrīnthō.  
*Demaratus fled from Corinth.*

a. So dōmō (*from home*), rūrē (*from the country*).

On the Accusative of Place *Whither*, see § 101.

§ [122.] XII. Various Prepositions govern an Ablative. (See the list, § 83).

a. Prepositions, even when compounded, govern an Ablative, especially āb, dē, ex :

Quīnctiūs dictātūrā sē abdicāvit.  
*Quinctius resigned the dictatorship.*

Dētrūdunt nāvēs scōpūlō.  
*They thrust off the ships from the rock.*

b. The Ablative of the Agent takes the Preposition ā, āb :

Laudātūr āb hīs, culpātūr āb illīs.  
*He is praised by these, he is blamed by those.*

[§ 123.] XIII. The Ablative of Separation and Origin is joined also without a Preposition to Verbs and Participles :

Cēdēs cōemptīs saltībūs et dōmō.  
*You will retire from purchased glades and mansion.*

Pēlōpē nātūs, Tantalō prognātūs est.  
*He was born of Pelops, descended from Tantalus.*

[§ 124.] XIV. Ablative of the Thing Compared :

(1) For quam (*than*) with Nominative :

Nihil est amābiliūs virtūtē.  
*Nothing is more amiable than virtue.*

Viliūs argentum est aurō, virtūtībūs aurum.  
*Silver is less valuable than gold, gold than virtues.*

(2) For quam with Accusative :

Pūtō mortem dēdēcōrē lēviōrem.  
*I think death easier than disgrace.*

Nēmīnem Ljcurgō ūtīliōrem Spartā gēnūit.  
*Sparta produced no man more serviceable than Ljcurgus.*

[§ 125.] XV. A Substantive combines with a Participle in the Ablative which is called Absolute :

Rēgībūs exactīs consulēs creāti sunt.  
*Kings having been driven out, consuls were elected.*



a. For the Participle is often substituted another Substantive, or an Adjective :

Nīl despērandum Teucrō dūce ēt auspīcē Teucrō.  
*There must be no despair with Teucer for leader, and Teucer for omen-giver.*

Nātūs est Augustūs consūlibūs Cīcērōnē et Antōniō.  
*Augustus was born when Cicero and Antonius were consuls.*

Jamquē cīnis, vīvīs frātrībūs, Hectōr erat.  
*And now Hector was ashes, his brothers being alive.*

Quīd dicam, hāc jūventūtē?  
*What can I say, when our young men are of this stamp?*

## ON THE GENITIVE.

[§ 126.] The Genitive, the Case of the Proprietor, generally defines Nouns subjectively or objectively.

## A. THE SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

[§ 127.] I. Genitive of the Author and Possessor :

Pōlyclētī signā plānē perfectā sunt.  
*Polycletus's statues are quite perfect.*

Singūlōrum ōpēs sunt dīvītiāe civītātis.  
*The resources of individuals are the riches of the state.*

Omnīa, quae mūliērīs fūerunt, virī fiunt.  
*All things, which were the woman's, become the husband's.*

Ēā stātūā dicēbātūr essē Myrōnīs.  
*That statue was said to be Myro's.*

a. Sometimes the Genitive depends on a word omitted.

Hectōrīs Andrōmāchē (supplē uxōr).  
*Hector's Andromache (supply wife).*

Ventum ērāt ad Vestae (supplē templum).  
*We had come to Vesta's (supply temple).*

b. A Genitive so stands that *nature, token, function, or duty*, can be supplied.

Cūjusvis hōmīnīs est errārē.  
*It is in any man's nature to err.*

Est ādōlescentīs mājōrēs nātū vērērī.  
*The young man's duty is to reverence elders.*

Tempōrī cēdērē hābētūr sāpientīs.  
*To yield to occasion is held a wise man's function.*

## [§ 128.] II. Genitive of Quality, with Epithet.

*Ingēnūi vultūs pūēr ingēnūiquē pūdōris.*

*A boy of high-bred countenance and high-bred modesty.*

*Claudīūs ērāt somnī brēvissimī.*

*Claudius was (a man) of very brief slumber.*

a. The Elliptic Genitives may be remarked: *parvī* (of small worth), *mīnōris* (of less value), *mīnimī* (of very little worth), *magnī* (of great price), *plūris* (of more value), *plūrinī*, (of high value), *tantī* (of so great price), *quantī* (of what price), *maximī* (of very great price), to which supply *prētīi*:

*Vōluptātem virtūs mīnimī faciūt.*

*Virtue makes pleasure of very small account.*

*Ēmit hortōs tantī quantī Pŷthiūs vōlūt.*

*He bought the pleasure-ground at such price as Pythius wanted.*

[§ 129.] III. Intērest (*it imports*), rēfert (*it concerns*), admit a Genitive:

*Intērest omnīum rectē faciūt.*

*It imports all men to act rightly.*

*Rēfert compōsitōnis quae quībūs antēpōnās.*

*It concerns arrangement what things you place before what.*

a. The same Verbs instead of the Genitives of Pronouns use the Possessive Cases, *mēā*, *tūā*, *sūā*, *nostrā*, *vestrā*, *cūjā*, agreeing with *rē*:

*Ēt tūā ēt mēā intērest tē vālērē.*

*It imports both your weal and mine, that you be well.*

*Quīd nostrā id rēfert?*

*What (does) that concern us?*

## [§ 130.] IV. A Genitive of the Thing Distributed is joined to Partitive words, which, as far as may be, take the Gender of the Genitive:

*Ēlēphantō bēlūārūm est nullā prūdētīōr.*

*Of beasts, none is more sagacious than the elephant.*

*Hōmīnī ūnī ānīmāntīum luctūs est dātūs.*

*To man alone of animals sorrow has been given.*

*Sullā centum vīgintī sūōrūm āmīsīt.*

*Sulla lost a hundred and twenty of his men.*

*Mājor Nērōnūm mox grāvē praelīum commīsīt.*

*The elder of the Neros ere long fought a severe battle.*

*Gallōrūm fortissimī sunt Belgae.*

*The Belgae are bravest of the Gauls.*

Nēmō mortāliū omnībūs hōrīs sāpit.  
Of mortals nobody is wise at all hours.

Piscūm fēmīnae mājōrēs sunt quam mārēs.  
Of fishes the females (are) larger than the males.

Sēquimur tē, sanctē dēōrum.  
We follow thee, holy one of gods.

Hōc ād tē mīnimē omnīum pertīnēt.  
This belongs to thee least of all men.

a. Nostrūm (of us), vestrūm (of you), follow Partitives :

Tē vēnīrē ūterquē nostrūm cūpīt.  
Each of us desires that you come.

[§ 131.] V. A Genitive of the Thing Measured is joined to Words of Quantity and Neuter Adjectives :

Sātīs ēlōquentīae, sāpientīae pārūm est.  
He has enough eloquence, too little wisdom.

Āliquīd pristīnī rōbōrīs conservāt.  
He keeps something of his old strength.

Quantum nummōrum, tantum fidēi est.  
There is the same amount of credit as of money.

### B. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

[§ 132.] I. A Genitive is joined objectively to Substantives, Adjectives, or Participles, which have a certain transitive force, especially if they signify skill, care, desire, or whatever is contrary to these.

Insītūs est mentī cognītiōnīs āmor.  
Love of knowledge is implanted in the mind.

Diffīcīlīs est cūrā rērum āliēnārum.  
Hard is the care of other people's affairs.

Tempūs ēdax rērum est.  
Time is consumer of things.

Corpūs pātiens īnēdīae fūit.  
His body was capable of enduring inanition.

Consciā mens rectī est.  
The mind is conscious of rectitude.

Impērītūs mōrum fūit.  
He was unskilled in manners.

Āvidā est pēricūlī virtūs.  
Valour is greedy of danger.

Animūs fūit āliēnī appētens, sūī prōfūsūs.  
His mind was desirous of another's (wealth), lavish of his own.

a. Měi, tūi, sūi, nostrī, vestrī, are put objectively ; měūs, tūūs, sūūs, nostēr, vestēr, subjectively :

Nicīās tūā sūi mēmōriā dēlectātūr.

*Nicias is charmed with your recollection of him.*

(a) A Subjective Genitive understood in a Possessive Pronoun admits a Genitive agreeing with it :

Republicā mēā unīūs ōpērā salvā ērāt.

*The state was saved by my single exertion.*

Āvēs fētūs ādultōs sūae ipsōrum fidūciāe permittunt.

*Birds entrust grown nestlings to their own self-reliance.*

[§ 133.] II. A Genitive is joined to Verbs and Adjectives which signify *power* and *impotence*, *inculpation*, *innocence*, *condemnation*, *acquittal*, *memory* and *forgetfulness* :

(1) Rōmānī signōrum pōtītī sunt. § 119 a.

*The Romans gained the standards.*

Irā est impōtens sūi.

*Anger is incapable of self-restraint.*

(2) Frāternī est sanguīnīs insons.

*He is innocent of a brother's blood.*

Rēūs est injūrīarum.

*He is arraigned of injurious acts.*

(3) Pētiliūs furtī absōlūtūs est.

*Petillius was acquitted of theft.*

Condemnāmus hāruspicēs stultītiāe.

*We condemn soothsayers (as guilty) of folly.*

(4) Rēs adversae admōnent nōs rēligiōnum.

*Adversity reminds us of religious duties.*

Omnēs immēmōrem bēnēficiū ōdērunt.

*All men hate one unmindful of a kindness.*

a. Měmīnī, rēmīniscōr, rēcōrdōr (*I remember*), oblīviscōr (*I forget*), admit Genitive or Accusative :

Jūbet mortis tē mēmīnissē Dēus.

*God bids thee remember death.*

Dulcēs mōriens rēmīniscītūr Argōs.

*Dying he remembers sweet Argos.*

[§ 134.] III. Pīgēt (*it irks*), pūdēt (*it shames*), paenītēt (*it repents*), taedēt (*it disgusts*), and mīsērēt (*it moves pity*), Impersonal Verbs, take a Genitive with an Accusative :

Mīsērēt tē āliōrum : tūi nēc mīsērēt nēc pūdēt.

*Thou pitiest others, for thyself without pity or shame.*

Ēōs partim scēlērūm, partim inep̄tiārūm paenītēt.

*They repent, some of their crimes, others of their follies.*

[§ 135.] IV. *Misĕrĕōr*, *misĕrescō* (*I pity*), take a Genitive; *misĕrōr*, *commisĕrōr* (*I compassionate*), an Accusative :

*Arcādī, quaesō, misĕrescītē rĕgis.*

*Pity, I pray, the Arcadian king.*

*Sortem misĕrātūr inīquam.*

*He compassionates the unjust fate.*

[§ 136.] VI. The Genitive is freely used by poets. But *aegĕr ānimī* (*sick at heart*), *ānimī pendĕō* (*I waver in mind*), and the like, appear even in prose.

#### ON CASES OUT OF THE SENTENCE.

[§ 137.] The Vocative stands out of the Sentence either without an Interjection or with an Interjection :

*Ōrō tē, fili (vēl O fili).*

*I pray thee, son (or, O son).*

[§ 138.] The Nominative and the Accusative are used in Exclamations either without an Interjection or with an Interjection :

(1) *Infandum!*

*Unutterable!*

*Eccĕ nŏvā turbā!*

*Lo, a new disturbance!*

(2) *Mĕ misĕrum!*

*Wretched me!*

*Ēn quattuŏr ārās!*

*Lo, four altars!*

[§ 139.] So the Dative is put with *hei* (*alas!*), *vae* (*woe!*).

*Hei misĕrō mĕhi!*

*Alas wretched me!*

*Vae victīs!*

*Woe to the vanquished!*

#### ON THE VERB INFINITE.

[§ 140.] I. The Infinitive stands—

1. Substantively, for Nominative or Accusative :

(1) *Invidĕrĕ nŏn cādīt in sāpientem.*

*Envyng happens not to a wise man.*

*Dulce et dĕcŏrum est prŏ patriā mŏrĭ.*

*Dying for country is sweet and comely.*

(2) *Mŏrĭ nĕmŏ sāpiens misĕrum dixĕrīt.*

*No wise man will call it miserable to die.*

2. Predicatively, in narration, for a Finite Verb :

*Multī sēquī, fūgērē, occīdī, cāpī.*

*Many were following, flying, being slain, being captured.*

3. Obliquely, with Accusative of the Subject. See § 94.

4. Carrying on the construction of a Verb or Adjective :

*Sōlent dīū cōgītārē quī magnā vōlunt gērērē.*

*They are wont to reflect long who wish to perform great things.*

*Pātrīae dīcērīs essē pāter.*

*Thou art said to be father of thy country.*

*Lūdum insōlentem lūdērē pertīnax.*

*Persisting to play an insolent game.*

[§ 141.] II. Gerunds and Supines are the Cases of the Infinitive.

1. The Accusative of the Gerund is joined to Prepositions :

*Ād bēnē vīvendum brēvē tempūs sātīs est.*

*For living well a short time is sufficient.*

2. The Genitive of the Gerund is joined to Substantives and Adjectives :

*Ars scrībendī discītūr.*

*The art of writing is learnt.*

*Cūpīdūs audīendī est.*

*He is desirous of hearing.*

3. The Dative of the Gerund is joined to Nouns and Verbs :

*Pār est dīssērendō.*

*He is competent for arguing.*

*Dāt ōpēram lēgendō.*

*He pays attention to reading.*

4. The Ablative of the Gerund is of cause or manner, or is joined to a Preposition :

*Fūgīendō vīcīmūs.*

*We conquer by flying.*

*Dē pugnandō dēlibērant.*

*They deliberate about fighting.*

5. The Supine in *um* is an Accusative after Verbs of motion :

*Lūsum it Maecēnās, dormītum ēgō.*

*Mæcenas goes to play, I to sleep.*

- a. *Īrī* with the Supine forms the Infinitive of the Future Passive :

*Audīērāt nōn dātum īrī filiō uxōrem sūō.*

*He had heard (that there was) no intention (non īrī) to give a wife to his son.*

6. The Supine in *u* is for an Ablative of Respect :

*Foedum dictū est.*

*It is horrible to state.*

*Nēfās vīsū est.*

*It is impious to view,*

[§ 142.] III. The Infinitive, with Gerund, Participles, and Supine in *um*, governs the same Cases as the Verb Finite :

Cūpīō sātisfācērē rēipublicae.  
*I desire to satisfy the commonwealth.*

Cūpīdūs sum sātisfāciendī rēipublicae.  
*I am desirous of satisfying the commonwealth.*

Ausi omnēs immānē nēfās ausōquē pōtītī.  
*All dared monstrous impiety, and achieved their daring.*

Ast ēgō non Graiis servitum mātrībūs ibō.  
*But I will not go to be a slave to Greek matrons.*

[§ 143.] In Transitive Gerunds the Gerundive Attraction is more usual; the rule for which construction is the following :

The Object is attracted to the Case of the Gerund, the Gerund to the Number and Gender of the Object :

Brūtūs in libērandā pātriā est interfectūs.  
*Brutus was slain in freeing his country.*

Hi septemvirī fūerunt āgrīs dīvidendīs.  
*These were the seven commissioners for dividing lands.*

[§ 144.] IV. 1. The Impersonal Gerundive construction implies necessity, principally in Intransitive Verbs :

Bībendum est.		Ēundum ērit.
<i>One must drink.</i>		<i>One will (have) to go.</i>

a. To this may be joined a Dative, more rarely an Ablative with *ā*, *āb* :

Bībendum est nōbīs.		Vōbīs ēundum ērit.
<i>We must drink.</i>		<i>You will (have) to go.</i>

b. And any other Case governed by the Verb :

Cīvībūs est ā vōbīs consūlendum.  
*You must consult for the citizens.*

Sūō cuiquē jūdīciō est ūtendum.  
*Each must use his own judgment.*

Eudoxūs ōpīnātūr Chaldaeiis mīnimē essē crēdendum.  
*Eudoxus thinks that astrologers should by no means be believed.*

2. The Attributive construction of the Gerundive implies necessity, in Transitive Verbs :

Dēūs ēt dīligendūs est nōbīs ēt tīmendūs.  
*God is both to be loved and feared by us.*

Nōn tangendā rātēs transiliunt vadā.  
*Barks o'erleap the shallows (which should) not be meddled with.*

## ON THE PRONOUN.

[§ 145.] *Sē, sūus*, Reflexive Pronouns, are referred to the Subject of the principal Sentence, provided it be of the third Person :

*Sentit ānimūs sē vī sūā mōvērī.*  
*The mind feels (that) it is moved by its own force.*

a. Reflexives can be referred to the Object, if that reference involves no ambiguity :

*Scipiōnem impellit ostentātīō sū.*  
*Ostentation of self sways Scipio.*

*Āpībūs fructum restitūō sūum.*  
*I restore to the bees their produce.*

*Mors sūā quemquē mānet.*  
*His death awaits every man.*

## ON SOME PARTICLES.

[§ 146.] Many Conjunctions annex like words to like :

*Mirātur portās strēpītumque et strātā vīarum.*  
*He marvels at the gates and the noise and the pavements of the streets.*

*Virtūs nec ēripī nec surripī pōtest.*  
*Virtue can neither be torn away nor stolen.*

*Nēmīnem sapiētīōrem pūtō quam Sōcrātem.*  
*I deem no man wiser than Socrates.*

*Omnē solum fortī patriā est, ut piscībūs aequor.*  
*Every soil is a country to the brave man, as the sea to fishes.*

[§ 147.] *Nē* prohibitive is used with an Imperative or Conjunctive Mood: *nēdum* (*not to say, much less*), *ūtīnam* (*O that*), *O sī, ūt* for *ūtīnam*, with a Conjunctive :

*Nē quā mēis estō dictīs mōrā.*  
*Let there be no delay to my orders.*

*Nē culpam in mē contūlērīs.*  
*Lay not the fault on me.*

*Neu dēsint ēpūlis rōsae.*  
*And (let) roses not be wanting to the feast.*



Mortālīā factā pēribunt,  
*Nēdum sermōnum stēt hōnōs et grātiā vivax.*  
*Mortal deeds will perish, much less (can) the honour and popu-*  
*larity of literary works stand permanent.*

Ūtīnam mīnūs vītae cūpīdī fūissēmūs.  
*Would that we had been less fond of life.*

O sī urnam argentī fors quae mīhī monstrēt!  
*O if some chance would show me a pot of silver!*

Ūt illum dī dēaequē perdant.  
*I wish that the gods and goddesses may destroy him.*

### OUTLINE OF RULES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

[§ 148.] The Conjunctive Mood is used, purely, in various senses: but, if it is subjoined to another Verb, it is called Subjunctive.

[§ 149.] Pronouns and Particles, which question indirectly, require a Subjunctive:

Ipsē quis sīt, ūtrum sīt, an nōn sīt, id quōquē nescit.  
*He knows not even this, who himself is, whether he is, or is not.*

Such Interrogatives are:

Quantūs ( <i>how great</i> )	Cūr ( <i>why</i> )
Ūtēr ( <i>which of two</i> )	Quōtīēs ( <i>how often</i> )
Quālīs ( <i>of what sort</i> )	Quārē ( <i>wherefore</i> )
Quīs ( <i>who or what</i> )	Quam ( <i>how</i> )
Quōt ( <i>how many</i> )	Quōmōdō ( <i>how</i> )
Quōtūs ( <i>which, in order of number</i> )	Num, nē ( <i>whether</i> )
Undē ( <i>whence</i> )	Ūt ( <i>how</i> )
Ūbī ( <i>where or when</i> )	An, ūtrum ( <i>whether</i> ).
Quandō ( <i>when</i> )	

[§ 150.] The Relative quī, with its Particles, ūbī (*where, when, &c.*), undē (*whence*), &c., in its simple sense, takes an Indicative; if there is implied in it *since, although, in order that, or such that*, a Subjunctive:

Mīsērēt tūi mē, quī hunc faciās inimicum tibi.  
*I pity you, since you make this man your foe.*

Littērās misī quibūs ēt plācārem eum ēt mōnērem.  
*I sent a letter wherewith I might pacify and admonish him.*

Quīs est quī nōn ōdērīt prōtervam pūērītiām?  
*Who is there that hates not saucy boyhood?*

Dignā rēs est ūbī nervōs intendās.  
*The matter is worthy (that) you devote your energies to it.*

[§ 151.] A Relative or Conjunction, if it is subordinate to Oratio Obliqua, either actual or virtual, requires a Subjunctive.

Ennius nōn censēt lūgendam essē mortem, quam immortalitās consēquātūr.

*Ennius considers that death (ought) not to be mourned, which immortality succeeds.*

Sōcrātēs accūsātūs est quōd corrupērēt iūventūtem.

*Socrates was accused (on the charge) that he corrupted youth.*

a. A Conjunctive Mood often has a Subjunctive in subordination to it.

Clāmant omnēs: praestārēt quōd rēcēpissēt.

*All cry out, he should perform what he had undertaken.*

[§ 152.] Of Conjunctions governing\* Moods there are three Classes:

I. The First Class consists of those Conjunctions, to which the Subjunctive is appropriate:

(1) CONSECUTIVE:

Ūt (*so that*)  
Quīn (*but that*)

(2) FINAL:

Ūt (*in order that*)  
Nē (*lest, that . . . not*)  
Quō (*in order that*)  
Quōmīnūs (*but that*)

(3) CAUSAL:

Quum (*since*)

(4) CONDITIONAL:

Dum  
Mōdō  
Dummōdō } (*provided that*)

(5) CONCESSIVE:

Līcēt  
Quamvis  
Ūt } (*although*)

(6) COMPARATIVE:

Tanquam  
Vēlūt, ceu } (*as if*)  
Quāsi, &c.

II. The Second Class consists of those Conjunctions, to which the Indicative is appropriate, unless they are subordinate to Oratio Obliqua, either actual or virtual.

(1) CAUSAL:

Quōd, quīā (*because*)  
Quōnīam (*since*)  
Quandōquīdem (*since*)  
Sīquīdem (*inasmuch as*)

(2) TEMPORAL:

Quandō, quum, ūbī (*when*)  
Ūt (*when, since*)  
Quōtīēs (*as often as*)

Sīmūl (*as soon as*)

Post-quam (*after that*)

Dum  
Dōnēc  
Quōād } (*whilst, as long as*)

(3) CONCESSIVE:

Quamquam (*although, however*)  
Ūtūt (*however*)

\* When we speak of Moods being governed by Conjunctions, we mean only that certain Conjunctions are used, always or in certain senses, with certain Moods. The reason of Mood is independent of Conjunctions; but Conjunctions distinguish the relations of Clauses more fully, as Prepositions distinguish the relations of Nouns.

III. The Third Class consists of those Conjunctions which either the Indicative or the Subjunctive follows, according as the matter expressed is fact or contingency.

## (1) TEMPORAL:

Dum, dōnēc, quōād (*until*)  
 Antē-quam } (*before that*)  
 Prius-quam }

## (2) CONDITIONAL AND CONCESSIVE:

Sī (*if*)  
 Nisi (*unless*)  
 Etsī, etiāmsī (*although, even if*)

a. [§ 153.] Idioms of the Latin language are:

(1) Quum (*when*) followed by a Subjunctive of the Imperfect or Pluperfect.

Zēnōnem, quum Āthēnīs essem, audiēbam frēquentēr.  
*I often used to hear Zeno, when I was at Athens.*

Dēcēssit Agēsīlāūs quum in portum vēnissēt.  
*Agesilaus died, when he had come into harbour.*

(2) Dum (*whilst*), followed by an Indicative Present, even in oblique subordination, and concerning a past circumstance:

Quem ardōrem stūdiū censētis fūissē in Archimēdē, quī,  
*dum in pulvērē quaedam dēscribīt attentius, nē patriām quīdem captam essē sensērīt?*

*What ardour of study think ye there was in Archimedes, who, whilst drawing some figures in the dust with peculiar attention, did not perceive even that his country was captured?*

b. [§ 154.] A Conjunction is sometimes understood.

Philōsōphīae serviās oportēt.

*It behoves (that you) be a servant to philosophy (supply ut).*

Quaeram justum sit necnē pōēma.

*I will inquire (whether) it be a true poem or not (supply ūtrum).*

Partem ōpēre in tantō, sinēret dōlōr, Īcāre, hābērēs.

*Thou, Icarus, wouldst have a share in this great work, did grief allow (supply sī).*

c. [§ 155.] The Rule for the Consecution of Tenses is, that Primary Tenses are subordinated to Primary, Historic to Historic. (§ 48).

Examples may be looked out from the Syntax.

## SUPPLEMENTARY RULES OF AGREEMENT.

[§ 156.] (1) Adjectives are put for Substantives :

*Multā paupĕrī dēsunt, āvārō omnīā.*

*Many things are wanting to the poor man, to the miser all things.*

(2) Infinitives are put for Substantives :

*Vivĕrĕ est vālĕrĕ.*

*To live is to be well.*

(3) Clauses are put for Substantives :

*Crĕdibīlĕ est omnīā consīlō fīĕrī.*

*It is probable that all things happen by design.*

[§ 157.] The Nominative of an Impersonal Verb is not apparent unless it be an Infinitive or a Clause :

*Pūdĕt ĕum factī (i. e. pūdōr pūdet).*

*He is ashamed of the act.*

*Quīd agītūr? Stātūr (i. e. stātīō fīt).*

*What is being done? There is a stand-still.*

*Taedĕt ĕādem audīrĕ millīēs.*

*To hear the same things a thousand times is tedious.*

*Magnī intĕrest ūt tĕ vīdĕām.*

*It is of great importance that I should see you.*

[§ 158.] A Word is understood when omitted by the figure Ellipsis :

*Nīhīl bōnum nīšī quōd hōnestum (understand est twice).*

*Nothing is good but what is morally right.*

*Perfundor gĕlīdā (understand āquā).*

*I bathe myself with cold water.*

[§ 159.] Agreement is varied by the figure called Attraction :

*Nōn omnīs errōr stultītīā est dīcendā.*

*Not every error must be called folly.*

*Thĕbae, quōd Boeōtīae cāpūt est.*

*Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.*

[§ 160.] Agreement with the meaning takes place by the figure called Synesis, especially in poetry :

*Sūbĕunt Tĕgĕaeā jūventūs auxiliō tardī.*

*The youth of Tegea come slow to the succour.*

*Ūbī est īs scĕlūs, quī mĕ perdīdīt?*

*Where is that villain, who has ruined me?*

## OUTLINE OF PROSODY.

[§ 161.] Prosody treats of the quantity of syllables and of the laws of metre.

### ON THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

#### GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

- [§ 162.] 1. Every diphthong and contracted syllable is long.  
 2. Primitives give their own quantity to their derivatives.  
 3. A vowel coming before a vowel will be short.  
 4. Any vowel becomes long by Position, which two consonants follow, as *trīstis*: or which in the same word *j* follows or *x* or *z*: so *Ajax*, *āxis*, *Amāzon*.  
 5. A vowel, though short by its own power, is doubtful if a mute consonant with a liquid after it follows; thus you will say rightly (*lugūbre melos*) a mournful melody, or *lugūbre*.  
*a.* *Gn* always makes a long syllable, as *āgnus* and *īgnis*: and like wise *gm*; which *tēgmen* and *āgmen* shew.

#### ON THE QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

- [§ 163.] 1. Most words of one syllable are long, as *mē*, *vēr*.  
 2. Words ending in A are long: *frustrā*, and *contrā*, and *parā*.  
*a.* Except Accusative and Nominative Cases: (*Musā*) the Muse sings (*carminā*) songs: the woods resound (*Amaryllidā*) *Amaryllis*.  
 3. E final is short: as *legĕ*, *timetĕ*, *carerĕ*.

[§ 162.] 1. Examples: *heū*; *cōygo* = *cōgo*. Except *prae* before a vowel, as *praeunte*m.

2. Examples: *pōmum*, *pōmarium*; *sālix*, *sālicetum*. Exceptions are numerous, as *hōmo*, *hūmanus*; *nūbo*, *pronūba*; *nōtus*, *cognītus*.

3. Examples: *principium*, *prōhibe*. (*H* is regarded as a breathing only, and not taken into account in Prosody.) Many Greek exceptions; as *Chāonis*, *Aenēas*, *Clio*, *Myrtōus*, *Enŷo*. Some Latin, as, *diēi*, *Pompēi*; *aulāi*, *ēheu*; *fio* (except before *er*, as *fieri*); Doubtful: *fidēi*, *Dīana*; *Gen. in ius*, as *illius*.

[§ 163.] 1. Exceptions: words in *l*, *b*, *d*, *t*, as *vĕl*, *sŭb*, *īd*, *ĕt*, *stĕt*. Also *ĕs* and its compounds, as, *adĕs*; *quĕ*, *vĕ*, *nĕ* interrogative; *nĕc*, *ān*, *īn*, *pĕr*, *tĕr*, *vĭr*, *cōr*, *ōs* (*ossis*), *fāc*, *fĕr*, *bis*, *is*, *cis*, *quĭs*.

2. *a.* Most Vocatives in *ā* are short; as *Orestā*; also *ejū*, *itā*, *quĭū*.

3. Except Cases of the 1st and 5th Declension, as *Thisbĕ*, *speciĕ*; their Derivatives, as *quarĕ*, *hodiĕ*; Imperatives Sing. of the 2nd Conj., as *audĕ* (but *cavĕ* is doubtful). Adverbs derived from Adjectives; as, *miserĕ*: also *fermĕ*, *ferĕ*, *ohĕ*, *fāmĕ*.

4. Words in I are long; *dici* and *plebī* and *doī*.
5. Words in O are long; *virgō* and *multō* and *juvō*.
6. Words in U are long, so *tū* and *dictū* and *diū*.
7. Y final is short; thus poets have *chely*, *Tiphŷ*.
8. Words in C are long, as *illīc*, except *donēc*.
9. Shorten words in L, D, T; thus *Hannibāl*, *illūd*, *amavit*.
10. N final is short, *Ilion*, *agmēn*, are instances.
11. R final is short; as *calcār*, *amabitūr*, *Hectōr*.
12. Words in As are long; as *terrās* and *Menalcās*.
13. Words in Es are long; as *sedēs* and *viderēs*.
14. Is final is short; as *dicerīs*, *utilīs*, *ensīs*.
  - a. The Oblique Cases Plural are excepted, as *terrīs*, *vobīs*; also the Second Person Singular, Present Tense, of the Fourth Conjugation, as *audīs*; the compounds of *vīs*, *sīs*; *malīs*, *nolīs*, and *velīs*.
15. Words in Os are long, as *ventōs* and *sacerdōs*.
16. Us final is short: *olūs*, *intūs*, *amamūs*, are instances.
  - a. Except from this rule the contracted cases of the Fourth Declension, as *artūs*; and words which, increasing, have long penult; as *tellūs* and *incūs*, *juventūs* and *senectūs*.
17. Ys final is short: *chelys*, *Othryjs*, *Erinyjs*, are instances.
  - a. The custom of Authors governs Quantity, if a rule is wanting.

## ON THE LAWS OF METRE.

[§ 164.] A long syllable following a short is called Iambus (∪ -): but if a long syllable goes before a short one, that is a Trochee (- ∪): a Spondee will consist of two long syllables (- -); a Dactyl is formed by a long and two short syllables (- ∪ ∪).

## ON SCANSION AND FIGURES OF SCANSION.

[§ 165.] 1. Scansion, which Figures adjust by various art, distributes a Verse according to Feet.

4. Exceptions are: Greek Datives and Vocatives, as *Thyrsidī*, *Chlorī*; also *sicubī*, *neclubī*, *nīsī*, *quasī*. But *mihī*, *tibī*, *sibī*, *ubī*, *ibī*, are doubtful.
5. The quantity of words in O, especially Verbs and Proper Names, fluctuates. Oblique Cases, and Adverbs in O derived from Adjectives, have *ō* long, except *citō*. *Modō* and its Compounds, *egō*, *duō*, *octō*, *sciō*, *nesciō*, have *ō* short: *immō*, *putō*, doubtful.
10. Exceptions: many Greek words, as *Hymēn*, *Ammōn*.
11. Exceptions: many Greek words, as *cratēr*, *aēr*.
12. Exceptions: Greek cases of Third Declension, as *Arcās*, *lampadās*. Also *anās*, a *duck*.
13. Exceptions: Greek Plurals increasing; as, *Troadēs*: also *penēs*; and some Singular Nouns which increase short, as *segēs*.
14. a. *Gratis*, *foris*, are long: and Substantives which increase long, as *Samnīs*, *Simois*. *Ris* of the Future and Perfect in Verbs is doubtful, as *fecerīs*.
15. Some Greek words in *ōs* (ος) are short, as *Argōs*, *epōs*.
16. a. Some words from the Greek in *ūs* are long, as *Sapphūs*, *Melampūs*, *Iesūs*.

2. Synaloepha (Elision) will cut off a Vowel at the end of a word, if there be a vowel at the beginning of the next word: *Phyllid' am' ant' alias*, for *Phyllida amo ante alias*.

3. Ecthlipsis will cut off a Vowel and *m* from the end, if there be a Vowel at the beginning of the next word: *O curas homin', O quant' est in rebus inane*, for *hominum, quantum*.

a. The last syllable of a verse is counted doubtful.

---

[§ 166.] I. The maple is in the woods; the spirited horse wins the Olympia. You will sing with your voice: up, lead dogs, unless you are white on the temples. A club strikes; a nail holds firm, and a key opens. To please a companion, put on, as a companion, affable manners. Comedians, seek the stage; messmates, seek supper. Consult teachers, so you consult for yourself. Often has his own desire injured one desirous of war. Songs are recited, while temples are dedicated to the Lord. He trusted not to untie, who severed the knot with a sword. The man leads a wife; the bride veils for a husband. This man trains dogs to take them out soon against boars. If you have not money, you are destitute, and eat not delicacies. The sea often deceives one who relies too much on the clear surface. The sun chases the clouds, and irrecoverable time flies. By what a man sins, by the same the same man is soon punished. It is a difficult labour under the weight of which I sink. The boy's forehead is smooth, but the girl's tongue light. Seek hares in plains, elegancies in books. I bid not a penny for him who bids not a penny for me. I had rather break with my jaw good apples than bad. Merchandise is sold, and reward comes gained by toil. Silvia strokes lovingly, while she milks, her gentle cow. You will have done a duty, if you have sent coins to the wretched. Strive, little boy, whoever shalt desire to shine. She who is red, smeared with paint, is forgetful of decency. He fell by base treachery, whom a friend killed. A mouth commands, but a bone is eaten with the mouth. It is a wife's part to bring forth and obey, a husband's to procure. Obedient children make parents rejoice. Play at ball: a javelin is hurled; *pīla* is a pillar. *Plāga* is for a net and a country; *plāga* for a blow. People are the citizens of a city: but poplar is a tree. The prow is the front (of a ship), the stern the hind part, and the keel the lowest. A bail promises, but a vessel contains food. A bail kindly assures the person, but a surety money only. If you wish to go quick, you have need to use all the sails.

---

II. Trust, but first see; he who trusts, and has not well seen, is deceived: see lest you be inveigled by trust. The same fortune makes partners; the same toil comrades; one duty colleagues: but school, play, the table, make dear companions. *Lira* is the furrow of a field: *lyra* (the lyre) touched utters notes. Let him not be secure, who is not safe from the enemy: you have banks by a river, shore by the sea. Men are old by time; ancients lived formerly: I feign what is not, and dissemble what is. Have you any news? Seek another: I know nothing. That chatterer relates what matters little. If perchance you sit anywhere, and the seat is convenient to you, sit in that seat: nor give up the place to me.

## APPENDIX.

## I. NOTES ON ETYMOLOGY.

## I. NOUNS.

## A. Substantives:—

## FIRST DECLENSION.

*a.* The old Genitive ending **as** remains in *familias*: *as*, *pater-* (*mater-*) *familias*, *father* (*mother*) *of a family*.

*b.* The Gen. in **āī** is found in epic and comic poetry: *as*, *aquāī*.

*c.* Nouns which form Gen. Pl. in **um**, instead of *arum*, are (1) Patronymics: *as*, *Aeneādes*; (2) Some names of people, as *Lapitha*; (3) Compounds with *-cola*, *-gena*, as *caelicola*, *terrigena*; (4) *Drachma*, *amphora*.

*d.* Nouns like *Dea*, with Dat. Abl. Pl. **abus**, are some of those which correspond to Masculine Nouns in *us*: *as*, *filia*, *nata*, *liberta*, *mula*, &c.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

*a.* Nouns declined like *filius* are *genius*, *familiar spirit*, and Latin Proper Names in *ius*, as *Mercurius*, *Laelius*.

*b.* The Gen. **īī** was often contracted into **ī**. Virgil and Horace use **ī**; Ovid writes **īī**.

*c.* The Gen. Pl. in **um** for *orum* appears in (1) names of coins, weights, measures, and trades: *as*, *nummus*, *sestertius*, *medimnus*, *modius*, *talentum*, *faber*. So, *denūm talentūm*; *praefectus fabrūm*. (2) Some names of people: *as*, *Argivus*, *Danaus*. Poets often use it in words of short penult, as *virūm* for *virorum*.

*d.* Greek Nouns in **os**, *m.* and *f.*, have Acc. on or *um*: *as*, *Delos*; Acc. *Delon* or *Delum*. Nouns in **on**, *n.*, are like *bellum* in all but N. V. A. Sing.; *as*, *Pelion*.

*e.* *Pelagus*, *sea*, *virus*, *poison*, being Neuter, have Acc. and Voc. the same as Nom. *Vulgus*, *common people*, is Masculine or Neuter, and has *-um* or *-us* in Acc. These three Nouns have no Plural.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

*a.* Variant Consonant Nouns:

*Old man, Swine, Ox or cow, Jupiter,*

	m.	c.	c.	m.	
(a) N. V.	Senex	Sus	Bos	Juppiter	
Acc.	Sen-	Su-	Bov-	Jov-	<b>em</b>
Gen.	Sen-	Su-	Bov-	Jov-	<b>īs</b>
Dat.	Sen-	Su-	Bov-	Jov-	<b>ī</b>
Abl.	Sen-	Su-	Bov-	Jov-	<b>ē</b>
N. V. A.	Sen-	Su-	Bov-	—	<b>ēs</b>
Gen.	Sen-	Su-	—	—	<b>um</b>
D. Abl.	Sen-	—	—	—	<b>ibus</b>



Sus has Dat. Abl. Pl. subus or suibus : bos has Gen. Pl. boum, Dat. Abl. bōbus or būbus.

Iter, *journey*, n. ; Gen. itiner-is, etc.

Jecur, *liver*, n. ; Gen. jecōris or jecinōr-is, etc.

Supellex, *furniture*, f. ; Acc. supellectilem, etc.

(b) Parisyllable Nouns, declined like Consonant Nouns, are :

(1) the syncopated words, pater, mater, frater, accipiter ;

(2) canis, juvenis, vates, volucris.

b. Variant I-Nouns :

(a) Imparisyllable I-Nouns, like dens, are : (1) Nouns with Stem ending in two Consonants, except lynx ; (2) the words, glis, lis, mas, mus, nix (nivis), strix, with faux and vis.

(b) Nouns like tussis are : sitis, *thirst*, f. ; amussis, *carpenter's rule*, f. ; with a few more. Also names of rivers, as Tiberis, *Tiber*, m. ; of towns, as Hispalis, *Seville*, f.

(c) Like clavis : classis, *fleet*, f. ; febris, *fever* ; messis, *harvest* ; navis, *ship*, f. ; puppis, *stern*, f., and a few others. Restis, *rope*, f. Abl. ě ; securis, *axe*, f., Abl. ĩ only.

(d) Like canalis are Adjectival Nouns : as, aedilis, m.

(e) Like imber are : ūter, *bladder* ; venter, *belly*, m. ; linter, *boat*, f.

c. Greek Consonant-Nouns form Acc. Sing. in *ă* or *em* ; Acc. Plur. usually in *ăs* :

Gigas, <i>giant</i> , m.	gigant-	ă, em	ăs
Lampas, <i>torch</i> , f.	lampăd-	ă, em	ăs
Cratēr, <i>bowl</i> , m.	cratēr-	ă, em	ăs
Aēr, <i>air</i> , m.	aěr-	ă, em	ăs
So, Naïs, <i>Naiad</i> , f.	Naïd-	ă, em	ăs
Herōs, <i>hero</i> , m.	herō-	ă, em	ăs
Erinys, <i>fury</i> , f.	Eriny-	ă	ăs

(a) Greek Nouns in *īs*, *ŷs*, have Voc. *ĩ*, *ŷ* : as, Parĩ, Naĩ, Erinŷ.

(b) Greek I-Nouns have Nom. *īs*, f. ; Voc. *ĩ* ; Acc. *ĭn* or *im* ; Gen. *ĕös* ; Dat. Abl. *ĩ* : as, poēsis, *poetry*.

(c) The following are Heteroclite Masculine forms of Proper Names :

Nom.	Voc.	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Abl.
1. êus	eu	ĕum, ĕă	ĕĩ, ĕös	ĕĩ, ĕĩ, ĕō	ĕō
2. ĕs, êus	ĕ, eu	em, ĕn, ĕă	ĭs, ĕĩ, ĩ, ĕös	ĩ	ĕ
3. ĕs	ĕ, ĕs	em, ĕn	ĭs, ĩ	ĩ	ĕ, ĕ
4. ĕs	ĕs	em, ĕă	ĭs, ĩ	ĩ	ĕ
5. ĕs	ĕ, ĕs	em, ĕn, ĕtă	ĭs, ĕtĭs	ĩ, ĕtĩ	ĕ, ĕtĕ

Examples.—1. Orpheus, Peleus. 2. Achilles, Ulixes (êus). 3. Socrates, Thucydides. 4. Eteocles, Pericles. 5. Chremes, Thales.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

a. The Nouns which prefer ūbūs to ĩbūs in Dat. Abl. Pl. are Disyllables in **cus** : as, arcus, *bow* ; also, tribus, *tribe* ; partus, *birth* ; artus (Plur.), *limbs* ; and veru, *spit*, N.

b. Poets often contract **ul** into **ū** : as, Parce metu.—VIRG.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

- a. Dies, *day*, and res, *thing*, are the only Nouns which form the increasing Cases in the Plural. Most have no Plural at all.
- b. Poets contract **ei** into **ē**: as, Constantis juvenem fide.—Hor.
- c. Fidei generally has *e* short: so rei, spei.
- d. Respublica, *commonwealth*, declines both elements: Acc. rempublicam, Gen. reipublicae, etc. So jusjurandum, *oath*; Gen. jurisjurandi, etc.

## ANOMALOUS SUBSTANTIVES.

- a. The chief Nouns, Plural only (besides those named § 25), are:

DECL. 1. <i>f.</i>	Deliciae, <i>delight</i>	Nonae, <i>Nones</i>
	Epulae, <i>feast</i>	Nundinae, <i>market-day</i>
	Exsequiae, <i>funeral rites</i>	Nuptiae, <i>bridal</i>
	Feriae, <i>holidays</i>	Reliquiae, <i>remnant</i>
	Insidiae, <i>ambush</i>	Tenebrae, <i>darkness</i>
	Kalendae, <i>Calends</i>	Athenae, <i>Athens</i>
	Minae, <i>threats</i>	Thebae, <i>Thebes</i>
DECL. 2.	Fasti, <i>annals</i>	Delphi
		Gabii
DECL. 3.	Fores, <i>door, f.</i>	Moenia, <i>town walls, n.</i>
DECL. 4.	Artus, <i>limbs, m.</i>	Idus, <i>Ides, f.</i>

- b. The most important Nouns which change meaning in Plural are:—

DECL. 1.	Copia, <i>plenty, f.</i>	Copiae, <i>forces</i>
DECL. 2.	Ludus, <i>play, m.</i>	Ludi, <i>public games</i>
DECL. 3.	Aedes, <i>temple, f.</i>	Aedes, <i>house</i>

- c. Add to Defective Nouns:

b. Mane, *morning*, Nom. Acc. Abl. Sing.

c. Fas, *right*; nefas, *wrong*; instar, *likeness*; nihil, *nothing*; necesse, *necessity*; opus, *need*: Nom. Acc. Sing.

d. Fors, *chance*; Abl. S. forte, *by chance*.

e. Sponte, *by one's own choice*.

## B. Adjectives:—

a. Like melior are declined Comparatives. Vetus (veter-), *ancient*, has the same endings as melior in the Oblique Cases and Plural.

b. Like felix, Adjectives in **ax**, **ix**, **ox**, **ux**.

c. Like ingens, Adjectives in **-ns**, **-rs**, **-ex**; also locuples (locuplēt-), *wealthy*; par (pār-) with its compounds. Present Participles have Abl. S. **ī**, when used as Epithets; otherwise **ě**: with occasional exception.

d. Like acer, Adjectives of the Second Class in **-cer**, **-ster**; also celēber, *renowned*; salūber, *healthful*.

e. Abl. S. **ī**, Gen. Pl. *um*; no Neut. Pl. Nom. Acc.: inop-s, *destitute*; vigil, *wakeful*; memor, *mindful*; degener, *degenerate*; uber, *fruitful*.

f. Abl. S. **ě**, Gen. Pl. *um*; no Neut. Pl.: ales (alit-), *winged*; dives (divit-), *rich*; sospes (sospit-), *safe*; superstes (superstit-), *surviving*; compos (compot-), *possessing*; impos (impot-), *not possessing*; deses, reses (desid-, resid-), *inactive*; pauper, *poor*; puber, *of age*.

C. Pronouns:—

a. The suffixes -mēt, -tē, -ptē, -cē, strengthen various Pronouns.

(a) Mēt may be joined 1. to ego and its cases, except Gen. Plur.: as, egomet, *I myself*; 2. to the cases of tu, except Nom. Sing.: as, vosmet, *ye yourselves*; 3. to se and its cases, except sui: as, sibimet; 4. to the cases of s u u s: as, suamet facta.

(b) Tē is joined to tu: as tute; also, tutemet, *thou thyself*.

(c) Ptē is joined especially to the Abl. Sing. of the Possessive Pronouns: as, meopte consilio, *by my advice*.

(d) Cē is joined to the Demonstratives: as, huncce, hujusce. For illece, istece, are written illic, istic, which may be declined,

	Sing.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	istic	istaec	istuc	istice	istaece	istace
Acc.	istunc	istanc	istuc	istosce	istasce	istace
Gen.	istiusce, etc.			istorumce, etc.		

b. From the Possessives noster, vester, cujus, are derived:

Nostr-as (āt-), *of our country*. | Cuj-as (āt-), *of what country*.  
 Vestr-as (āt-), *of your country*. |

D. Derived Nouns.

1. Substantiva Mobilia have a Feminine as well as a Masculine form:

a. Many O-Nouns have a Feminine A-Noun formed by changing ūs into ā: agnus, *lamb*; asinus, *ass*; cervus, *stag*; deus, *god*; dominus, *lord*; equus, *horse*; famulus, *house-servant*; filius, *son*; libertus, *freedman*; lupus, *wolf*; maritus, *husband*; mulus, *mule*; natus, *son*; servus, *slave*; sponsus, *bridegroom*; ursus, *bear*, &c. Fem. agna, asina, &c.

Avus, *grandfather*, has avia; gallus, *cock*, gallina; caper, *he-goat*, capra and capella; puer, *boy*, puella; magister, minister, change *ter* into *tra*; poeta, *poet*, poetria; citharista, *harper*, citharistria. Taurus, *bull*, has vacca, *cow*; verna, *born-slave*, has ancilla, *maid-servant*.

b. Consonant-Nouns, verbal, in tōr, sōr, often have a Feminine trix: as, ultor, *avenger*, ultrix; victor, *conqueror*, victrix; tonsor, *barber*, tonstrix. Some forms in trix are found as Adjectives: as, arma victricia, *victorious arms*.

c. Caupo, *vintner* (3), has Fem. copa (1); cliens, *client* (3), clienta (1); fidicen, *lute-player* (3), fidicina (1); tibicen, *flute-player* (3), tibicina (1); leo, *lion* (3), leaena or lea (1).

d. Gentile names: as, Cres, *Cretan* (3), Cressa (1); Laco, *Lacedaemonian* (3), Lacaena (1); Libys, *Libyan* (3), Libyssa (1); Phoenix, *Phoenician* (3), Phoenissa (1); Thrax, *Thracian* (3), Threissa (1); Tros, *Trojan* (3) Troas (3), &c.

e. Nepos, *grandson* (3), has Fem. neptis (3); aries, *ram* (3), ovis, *ewe* (3); vir, *man* (2), mulier, *woman* (3); gener, *son in-law* (2), nurus (4); socer, *father-in-law* (2), socrus (4); senex, *old man* (3), anus (4).

Note. Nouns having only one Gender for both sexes are called Epicoena (ἐπίκοινα): as, passer, *sparrow*, m.; vulpes, *fox*, f. Sex must be expressed, if needful, by the words mas, femina: as, vulpes mas, *a dog-fox*.

2. Deminutives are Derived Nouns which express smallness. Deminutives are formed, chiefly, in

M.	F	N.
1. -ŭlus	-ŭla	-ŭlum
2. -ŏlus	-ŏla	-ŏlum
3. -ellus	-ella	-ellum
4. -cŭlus	-cŭla	-cŭlum
1. riv-ulus, <i>streamlet</i>	cist-ula, <i>small chest</i>	scut-ulum, <i>small shield</i>
2. fili-olus, <i>little son</i>	capre-ola, <i>young roe</i>	savi-olum, <i>kiss</i>
3. ag-ellus, <i>small field</i>	pat-ella, <i>saucer</i>	lab-ellum, <i>lip</i>
4. flos-culus, <i>floweret</i>	parti-cula, <i>particle</i>	munus-culum, <i>little present.</i>

Adjectives are also diminished: as, parvulus, pallidulus, misellus.

3. Patronymica are Personal Names, derived from a parent or ancestor.

<i>Masc.</i>			
ădēs,	Aeneădes,	<i>son of</i>	Aeneas.
īdēs,	Tyndarīdes	„	Tyndarus.
īdēs,	Nelīdes	„	Neleus.
īădēs	Thestiădes	„	Thestius.

<i>Fem.</i>			
īs,	Tyndaris,	<i>daughter of</i>	Tyndarus.
ēīs,	Nelēis,	„	Neleus.
ăīs,	Thestias,	„	Thestius.

And some others.

## II. COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

### A. CHANGES OF PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

(1) A, ab=

A before *m, v*: as, amitto, avoco.

Ab before *c, t*: as, abscedo, absterreo.

As before *p*: as, asporto.

Au before *f*: as, aufero, aufugio. But abfui, abfore.

Ab before other letters: as, abeo, abdo.

(2) Ad remains before *b, d, h, j, m, v*, and vowels: as, adbibō, addo, adhibeo, adjicio, admitto, advoco, adeo.

becomes *a-* before *gn, sc, sp*: as, agnosco, ascendo, aspicio.

is assimilated before other letters: as, affero, appono, assisto.

(3) Con- (for eum), in-, are written com-, im-, before *p, b, m*: as, comparo, combibo, immitto.

are assimilated before *l, r*: as, colludo, irruo.

Con- becomes *co-* before vowels, *h*, and *gn*: as, coeo, coheres, cognosco. So ignosco. Note comēdo, comburo.

Con-, in-, remain before other consonants: as, cenfero, induco.

(4) Ob, sub, are assimilated before *c, g, p, f*: as, occurro, oppono, suppono. So summoveo.

Except suscipio, suscito, suspendo, suspicio.

They remain before other letters.

Except ostendo, sustineo, sustollo, sustuli, surripio.

Note omitto.

- (5) E, e, x, are assimilated before *f*: as, *effero*.  
 Ex before vowels, *h, c, q, p, s, t*: as, *exeo, exhibeo, excedo, exquiro, expello, exstruo,\* extraho*.  
 E before others: as, *educo, evoco*.
- (6) Trans becomes *tra* before *d, j, n*: as, *trado, trajicio, trano*.  
 Tran- before *s*: as, *transcribo*.
- (7) Dis- is assimilated before *f*: as, *differo*.  
 Remains before gutturals, labials, *t, j*, and *s* with vowel:  
 as, *discerpo, dispello, distraho, disjicio, dissero*. But *dijudico*.  
 Di- before *s* with consonant, and before other consonants: as,  
*distringo, diruo*.  
 Not used before vowels. But *dir-ibeo* for *dis-hibeo*, *dir-imo* for *dis-imo*.
- (8) Re- se- add *d* in *reddo, redeo, redhibeo, redimo, redoleo, seditio*.

### B. VOWEL-CHANGE IN COMPOSITION.

- a. Verbs weakening *a* into *e* in all forms of their compounds:  
 (1) *damnare, jactare, lactare, patrare, sacrare, tractare*;  
 (2) *arcere*; (3) *-candere, carpere, scandere, spargere, gradi, pati*; (4) *farcere, partiri*.
- b. Verbs weakening *a* into *u* in all forms: (1) *calcare, saltare*;  
 (3) *quatere, (-cutere, -cussi, -cussum)*.
- c. Verbs weakening *ae* into *i* in all forms: (3) *caedere (-cidi, -cisum), laedere (-ludere, -lisi, -lisum), quaerere (-quiere, -quisivi, -quisitum)*.
- d. Verb weakening *au* into *u* in all forms: (3) *claudere (-cludere, -clusi, -clusum)*.
- e. Verb weakening *au* into *o* in all forms: (3) *plaudere (-plodere, -plosi, -plosum)*. Exc. *applaudere*.
- f. Verbs weakening *a* into *i* in all forms: (2) *habere, latere, placere, tacere*; (3) *sapere, statuere*. Exc. *complacere, perplacere*.
- g. Verbs which vary the Vowel in the forms of compounds:—
- (a) *a × i, e, a*: (3) *agere (-igere, -egi, -actum), frangere (-fringere, -frēgi, -fractum), pangere (-pingere, -pēgi, -pactum)*.  
 Exc. *circum-, peragere (-ēgi, -actum), cogere (co-ēgi, -actum), degere (dēgi), satagere (satēgi), repangere*.
- (b) *a × i, i, a*: (3) *cadere (-cidere, -cidi), tangere (-tingere, -tīgi, -tactum)*.
- (c) *a × i, i, e*: (3) *canere (-cinere, -cīnui, -centum), rapere (-ripere, -ripūi, -reptum)*.
- (d) *a × i, e, e*: (3) *capere (-cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum), facere (-ficere, -fēci, -fectum), jacere (-jicere, -jēci, -jectum), lacere (-licere, -lexi, -lectum)*. Exc. *benefacere* and many other compounds of *facere* (*-fācere, -fēci, -factum*), *elicere, elicui, elicītum*.
- (e) *a × i, i, u*: (4) *salire (-silire, -silui, -sultum)*.
- (f) *a × i, e*: (2) *fatēri (-fitēri, -fessus)*; (3) *apisci (-ipisci, -eptus)*.

\* The Greek form *ec* (ἐκ) must be assumed when *expecto, exul, &c.*, are written for *ec-specto, ec-sul, &c.*

- (g) *e × i, i, e*: (2) *tenēre* (-*tinēre*, -*tinui*, -*tentum*).  
 (h) *e × i, e, e*: (2) *sedēre* (-*sidēre*, -*sēdi*, -*sessum*); (3) *regēre* (-*rigēre*, -*rexi*, -*rectum*), *specēre* (-*spicēre*, -*spexi*, -*spec-tum*), *premēre* (-*primēre*, -*pressi*, -*pressum*), *emēre* (-*imēre*, -*ēmi*, -*emptum*), *legēre* (-*ligēre*, -*lēgi*, -*lectum*). Exc. *circumsedēre*, *pergēre* (*perrexi*, *perrectum*), *surgēre* (*surrexi*, *surrectum*); *co-*, *per-*, *inter-* (-*emēre*, -*ēmi*, -*emp-tum*). Also *sublegēre* (-*lēgi*, -*lectum*), *di-ligēre*, *neg-*, *intellegēre* (-*lexi*, -*lectum*). These four last are from *legēre*, *to choose*. The compounds of *legēre*, *to read*, are *per-*, *prae-*, *re-* (-*legēre*, -*lēgi*, -*lectum*).

## EXAMPLES OF COMPOUND VERBS.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a. (1) <i>Condemno, condemn</i>          | Conticeo, <i>be silent</i>             |
| Objecto, <i>cast forward</i>             | (3) <i>Desipio, be silly</i>           |
| Delecto, <i>delight</i>                  | Restituo, <i>restore</i>               |
| Impet̄ro, <i>obtain</i> (by ask-<br>ing) | g. (a) (3) <i>Abigo, drive away</i>    |
| Consec̄ro, <i>consecrate</i>             | Refringo, <i>beat back</i>             |
| Obtrecto, <i>disparage</i>               | Impingo, <i>knock against</i>          |
| (2) <i>Coerceo, confine</i>              | (b) (3) <i>Oc̄ido, die</i>             |
| (3) <i>Incendo, set on fire</i>          | Attingo, <i>reach</i>                  |
| Excerpto, <i>cull</i>                    | (c) (3) <i>Succino, sing low</i>       |
| Ascendo, <i>climb</i>                    | Diripio, <i>tear asunder</i>           |
| Dispergo, <i>disperse</i>                | (d) (3) <i>Decipio, deceive</i>        |
| Progredior, <i>go forward</i>            | Efficio, <i>effect</i>                 |
| Perpetior, <i>endure</i>                 | Ejicio, <i>cast out</i>                |
| (4) <i>Infercio, stuff in</i>            | Allicio, <i>allure</i>                 |
| Dispertior, <i>distribute</i>            | (e) (4) <i>Circumsilio, leap round</i> |
| b. (1) <i>Proculco, trample down</i>     | (f) (2) <i>Diffiteor, disown</i>       |
| Insulto, <i>insult, leap on</i>          | (3) <i>Adipiscor, acquire</i>          |
| (3) <i>Decutio, shake down</i>           | (g) (2) <i>Abstineo, abstain</i>       |
| c. (3) <i>Oc̄ido, kill</i>               | (h) (2) <i>Praesideo, preside</i>      |
| Collido, <i>dash together</i>            | (3) <i>Porr̄igo, stretch</i>           |
| Acquiro, <i>acquire</i>                  | Transpicio, <i>look through</i>        |
| d. (3) <i>Incl̄udo, shut in</i>          | Opprimo, <i>weigh down</i>             |
| e. (3) <i>Expl̄odo, stamp off</i>        | Eximo, <i>take out</i>                 |
| f. (2) <i>Prohibeo, prohibit</i>         | Colligo, <i>collect</i>                |
| Displiceo, <i>displease</i>              | Dil̄igo, <i>love</i>                   |
|  | Perl̄ego, <i>read through</i>          |

Note.—The Compounds of Verbs which reduplicate the Perfect omit the Reduplication in their Perfects, except those of *disco*, *posco*, *curro*, *do*, *sto*.

## III. CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS AND PARTICLES.

The full series comprises—1 Interrogativum; 2 Demonstrativa; 3 Relativum; 4 Indefinita; 5 Universalia. These last are subdivisible under several heads. In the following list the dual series (*uter*, &c.) is marked \*.

## PRONOUNS.

- |                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 <i>Quis? qui? who? what?</i> | <i>Idem, the same</i>              |
| * <i>Uter? which of two?</i>   | <i>Alius, another</i>              |
| 2 <i>Is, ille, iste, that</i>  | * <i>Alter, the one, the other</i> |
| <i>Hic, this</i>               | 3 <i>Qui, who</i>                  |

- 4 Quis, qui, *any one*  
 Aliquis, aliqui } *any one*  
 Quispiam  
 Quisquam, ullus, *any at all*  
 Quidam, *a certain one*  
 \*Alteruter, *one or other*
- 5 a. Quisquis, quicumque, *whosoever, whatsoever*  
 \*Uteruter, utercumque, *whichever*
- b. Quivis, quilibet, *any you will*  
 \*Utervis, uterlibet, *which you will*
- c. Quisque, *each (of several)*  
 Omnes, universi, *all*  
 \*Uterque, *each (of two)*  
 \*Ambo, *both*
- d. Nemo, nullus, *no one, none*  
 \*Neuter, *neither*

## ADVERBS OF PLACE WHERE.

- 1 Ubi? *where?*  
 \*Utrobi? *in which place?*
- 2 Ibi, illic, istic, *there*  
 Hic, *here*  
 Ibidem, *in the same place*  
 Alibi, *elsewhere*
- 3 Ubi, *where*
- 4 Ubi, alicubi, uspiam, *anywhere*  
 Usquam, *anywhere at all*
- 5 a. Ubiubi, ubicumque, *wheresoever*  
 b. Ubivis, ubilibet, *where you will*  
 c. Ubique, *everywhere*  
 \*Utrobique, *in both places*  
 d. Nusquam, *nowhere*  
 \*Neutrobi, *in neither place*

## ADVERBS OF PLACE WHITHER.

- 1 Quo? *whither?*  
 \*Utro? *to which place?*
- 2 Eo, illuc, istuc, *thither*  
 Huc, *hither*  
 Eodem, *to the same place*  
 Alio, *to another place*
- 3 Quo, *whither*
- 4 Quo, aliquo, quopiam, *anywhither*
- Quoquam, *anywhither at all*
- 5 a. Quoquo, quocumque, *whithersoever*  
 b. Quoquis, quolibet, *whither you will*  
 c. \*Utroque, *to each place*  
 d. \*Neutro, *to neither place.*

## ADVERBS OF PLACE WHENCE.

- 1 Unde, *whence?*
- 2 Inde, illinc, istinc, *thence*  
 Hinc, *hence*  
 Indidem, *from the same side*  
 Aliunde, *from another side*
- 3 Unde, *whence*
- 4 Unde, alicunde, *from some side*
- 5 a. Undeunde, Undecumque, *from whatever side*  
 b. Undevis, undelibet, *from what side you will*  
 c. Undique, *from every side*  
 \*Utrinque, *from each side* †

## ADVERBS OF TIME WHEN.

- 1 Quando? ubi? *when?*
- 2 Tum, tunc, *then*  
 Nunc, jam, *now*  
 Simul, *at the same time*  
 Alias, *at another time*
- 3 Quum, ubi, *when*
- 4 Quando, aliquando, *ever*  
 Unquam, *ever at all*
- 5 a. Quandocumque, *whenever*  
 c. Quandoque, *at any time*  
 Semper, *always*  
 d. Nunquam, *never*

† So quā, *in what direction?* eā, hāc, aliā, quā, aliquā, quaquā, &c. quorsum, *whitherward?* illorsum, aliquorsum, &c.  
 See the series of qualis, quantus, quot, § 38 (9).

## ADVERBS OF NUMBER.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 Quoties? <i>how often?</i>             | 4 Aliquoties, <i>several times</i>          |
| 2 Toties, <i>so often</i>                | 5 a. Quotiescumque, <i>how often soever</i> |
| 3 Quoties, ( <i>as often</i> ) <i>as</i> |   |

## ADVERBS OF MANNER.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 Quomodo? quemadmodum? ut? quam? <i>how?</i> | 3 Quomodo, quemadmodum, ut, <i>as</i>         |
| 2 Ita, sic, tam, <i>so</i>                    | Ac, atque, quam, <i>as, than</i>              |
| Item, itidem, <i>in like manner</i>           | 5 a. Utut, utcumque, quamquam, <i>however</i> |
| Aliter, secus, <i>otherwise</i>               |   |

## ADVERBS OF CAUSE.

- 1 Cur? quare? *why? wherefore?*
- 2 Ideo, propterea, idcirco, *on that account*
- 3 Cur, quare, *why*; quod, quia, *because*

## CORRELATION BETWEEN A DEMONSTRATIVE ADVERB AND A CONJUNCTION APPEARS ALSO IN

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (1) Consecutive Construction:                                    | 2 Usque, eo, &c., <i>so long, &amp;c.</i>                           |
| 2. Adeo, ita, sic, tam, tantum, &c., <i>so, so much, &amp;c.</i> | 3 Dum, donec, quoad, <i>until</i>                                   |
| 3. Ut, ut non, ut nihil, ut nemo, &c., <i>that, &amp;c.</i>      | (4) Conditional Construction:                                       |
| (2) Final Construction:  | 2 Modo, tantum, tantummodo, <i>only, &amp;c.</i>                    |
| 2. Idcirco, ideo, &c., <i>for the purpose, &amp;c.</i>           | 3 Si, <i>if</i> (or omitting si)                                    |
| 3. Ut, ne, ut ne, ne quis, &c., <i>that, &amp;c.</i>             | (5) Concessive Construction:  |
| (3) Temporal Construction:                                       | 2 Tamen, <i>yet, nevertheless</i>                                   |
| 2. Tum, tunc, <i>then</i>  | 3 Etsi, etiamsi, quamquam, quamvis, &c., <i>although, &amp;c.</i>   |
| 3. Quum, <i>when</i>   | (6) Comparative Construction:                                       |
| 2. Interea, <i>meantime</i>                                      | 2 Ita, perinde, proinde, similiter, itidem, <i>just so, &amp;c.</i> |
| 3. Dum, <i>whilst</i>  | 3 Quasi, ac si, ut si, &c., <i>as if, &amp;c.</i>                   |

## IV. NUMERALS, MONEY, TIME.

## A. NUMERALS.

a. The Cardinal Numbers are those on which the other Numerals hinge (*cardo, hinge*). Unus is used in the Plural with Substantives 'Plural only': as, una castra, *one camp*. But for higher numbers the Distributives are used: as, bina castra, *two camps*.

b. Ordinal Numerals denote numerical rank (*ordo*): primus, *first, &c.*

c. Distributive Numerals denote so many each or at each time: as, Sexageni caedunt singulos, *sixty men beat each (centurion)*.—TAC. Poets often use them for the Cardinal Numbers.

d. Numeral Adverbs denote the *number of times* that anything happens or is done: semel, *once*; bis, *twice*; &c.



<i>Roman Symbols.</i>	<i>Cardinalia.</i>	<i>Ordinalia.</i>	<i>Distributiva.</i>	<i>Adverbia.</i>
I.	unus	primus	singuli	semel
II.	duo	secundus <i>or</i> alter	bini	bis
III.	tres	tertius	terni <i>or</i> trini	ter
IV.	quattuor	quartus	quaterni	quater
V.	quinque	quintus	quini	quinquies
VI.	sex	sextus	seni	sexies
VII.	septem	septimus	septeni	septies
VIII.	octo	octavus	octoni	octies
IX.	novem	nonus	noveni	novies
X.	decem	decimus	deni	decies
XI.	undecim	undecimus	undeni	undecies
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus	duodeni	duodecies
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus	terni deni	tredecies
XVIII.	duodeviginti	duodevicesimus	duodeviceni	duodevicies
XIX.	undeviginti	undevicesimus	undeviceni	undevicies
XX.	viginti	vicesimus	viceni	vicies
XXI.	{ unus et vi- ginti <i>or</i> vi- ginti unus }	{ primus et vice- simus <i>or</i> vice- simus primus }	viceni singuli	{ semel et vi- cies }
XXX.	triginta	tricesimus	triceni	tricies
XL.	quadraginta	quadragesimus	quadrageni	quadrages
L.	quingenta	quingagesimus	quingageni	quingages
LX.	sexaginta	sexagesimus	sexageni	sexages
LXX.	septuaginta	septuagesimus	septuageni	septuages
LXXX.	octoginta	octogesimus	octogeni	octogies
XC.	nonaginta	nonagesimus	nonageni	nonages
C.	centum	centesimus	centeni	centies
CC.	ducenti	ducentesimus	ducenti	ducenties
D <i>or</i> IO.	quingenti	quingentesimus	quingeni	quingenties
M <i>or</i> CIO.	mille	millesimus	singula millia	millies
MM.	duo millia	bis millesimus	bina millia	bis millies

*e.* The General Rules for writing Compound Numbers, Cardinal, Ordinal, and Distributive, are as follows:—

(1) In Compound Numbers less than 20, either the smaller number without *et* precedes the larger, or the larger with *et* precedes the smaller: as, *Nos Tyndaritani in septemdecim populis Siciliae numeramur, we of Tyndaris are reckoned among the 17 nations of Sicily.*—CIC. *Roscius fundos decem et tres reliquit, Roscius left 13 farms.*—CIC. *Licet dicere decimus et septimus pro septimus decimus.*—PRISC.

(2) In Compound Numbers above 20, either the smaller number with *et* comes first, or the larger without *et*: as, *Romulus septem et triginta regnavit annos, Romulus reigned 37 years.*—CIC. *Dentes triceni bini viris attribuuntur, to men are assigned 32 teeth.*—PLIN.

(3) In Compound Numbers above 100, the larger with or without *et* generally precedes the smaller: as, *Leontinus Gorgias centum et septem complevit annos, Gorgias of Leontini completed 107 years.*—CIC. *Olympiade centesimā quartā-decimā Lysippus fuit, Lysippus lived in the 114th Olympiad.*—PLIN.

(4) The thousands are expressed either by prefixing the numeral

Adverbs *bis, ter, &c.*, to mille (chiefly in poetry), or by prefixing the Cardinal Numbers to millia: as, duo millia, tria millia, &c.

Millia is generally followed by a Genitive: but if smaller numbers intervene between millia and the Substantive, the latter will often stand in the same case as the Numeral: as, Tria millia et septingenti pedites ierunt, 3700 *infantry marched*.—LIV.

(5) The Numbers above 100,000 are expressed by the Numeral Adverbs joined to centum millia or centena millia, as stated in the following passage: Non erat apud antiquos numerus ultra centum millia; itaque et hodie multiplicantur haec, ut decies centena millia aut saepius dicantur.—PLIN.

f. Unus is often used in Compound Numbers for primus.

g. The Numbers compounded with 8 and 9 are commonly expressed by a subtraction of duo and unus from the next multiple of 10: as, duodeviginti (duodevicesimus), 18; undeviginti (undevicesimus), 19; duodetriginta (duodetricesimus), 28; undetriginta (undetricesimus), 29; &c., &c.: duodecentum (duodecentesimalis), 98; undecentum (undecesimalis), 99.

### B. MONEY.

a. The As (Libra), or pound of 12 ounces (unciae), was thus divided:

Uncia	= 1 oz. or $\frac{1}{12}$ of the As.	Septunx	= 7 oz. or $\frac{7}{12}$ of the As.
Sextans	= 2 " $\frac{1}{6}$ "	Bes	= 8 " $\frac{2}{3}$ "
Quadrans	= 3 " $\frac{1}{4}$ "	Dodrans	= 9 " $\frac{3}{4}$ "
Triens	= 4 " $\frac{1}{3}$ "	Dextans	= 10 " $\frac{5}{6}$ "
Quincunx	= 5 " $\frac{5}{12}$ "	Deunx	= 11 " $\frac{11}{12}$ "
Semissis	= 6 " $\frac{1}{2}$ "		

b. Unciae usurae =  $\frac{1}{12}$  per cent. per month = 1 per cent. per annum.

Sextantes	= $\frac{1}{6}$ " " = 2 " "
etc.	etc. etc.

Asses usurae = 1 per cent. per month = 12 per cent. per annum.

Asses usurae were also called centesimae; and binae centesimae = 2 per cent. per month = 24 per cent., &c. Unciarium fenus was 1 uncia yearly per as =  $8\frac{1}{3}$  per cent. per annum.

c. Heres ex asse . . . . . means heir to the whole estate.

Heres ex semisse, or .	}	" heir to $\frac{1}{2}$ of the estate.
Heres ex dimidia parte		
etc.		etc.

d. The Sestertius (Nummus), or Sesterce, was a silver coin equal to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  asses, being  $\frac{1}{4}$  of the Denarius (coin of 10 asses). Its symbol is HS.

The Sestertium (= 1000 sestertii) was not a coin, but a sum, and is only used in the Plural Number.

Sestertia, in the Plural (also represented by HS.) joined with the Cardinal or Distributive Numbers, denotes so many 1000 numi sestertii.

The Numeral Adverbs, joined with (or understanding) sestertii (Gen. Sing.), sestertium, or HS., denote so many 100,000 sestertii:

Thus HS.X = Sestertii decem, 10 sesterces.

HS.X̄ = Sestertia decem, 10,000 sesterces.

HS.X̄ = Sestertium decies, 1,000,000 sesterces.

C. TIME.—THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

Every Roman month had three chief days: Kalendae (Calends), Nonae (Nones), Idus (Ides). The Calends were always the 1st day of the month; the Nones were usually on the 5th; the Ides on the 13th; but in four months the Nones were on the 7th, the Ides on the 15th.

March, May, July, October; these are they  
Make Nones the 7th, Ides the 15th day.

These three days, the Calends, Nones, and Ides, were taken as points, from which the other days were counted backwards. That is, the Romans did not say, such and such a day *after*, &c., but such and such a day *before* the Calends, or Nones, or Ides. The rules are: (1) For days before the Calends subtract the day of the month from the number of days in the month increased by two; (2) For days before the Nones or Ides subtract from the day on which they fall, increased by one.

*Examples.*—May 31, Pridie Kalendas Junias.

- „ 30, Ante diem tertium (a.d. III.) Kal. Jun.
- „ 11, „ „ quintum (a.d. V.) Id. Mai.
- „ 2, „ „ sextum (a.d. VI.) Non. Mai.

English Month.	MARTIUS, MAIUS, JULIUS, OCTOBER, 31 Days.	JANUARIUS, AUGUSTUS, DECEMBER, 31 Days.	APRILIS, JUNIUS, SEPTEMBER, NOVEMBER, 30 Days.	FEBRUARIUS, 28 Days—in every fourth Year 29.
1	Kalendis	Kalendis	Kalendis	Kalendis
2	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
3	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
4	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
5	a.d. III.	Nonis	Nonis	Nonis
6	Pridie	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.
7	Nonis	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.
8	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.
9	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.
10	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
11	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
12	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
13	a.d. III.	Idibus	Idibus	Idibus
14	Pridie	a.d. XIX.	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVI.
15	Idibus	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XV.
16	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XIV.
17	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIII.
18	a.d. XV.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XII.
19	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XI.
20	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. X.
21	a.d. XII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. XI.	a.d. IX.
22	a.d. XI.	a.d. XI.	a.d. X.	a.d. VIII.
23	a.d. X.	a.d. X.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VII.
24	a.d. IX.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.
25	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.
26	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.
27	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. V.	a.d. III.
28	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. IV.	Pridie
29	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. III.	
30	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	Pridie	
31	Pridie	Pridie		

[In Leap-year, Feb. 24th (a.d. VI. Kal. Mart.) was twice reckoned,—hence this day was called *DIES BISSEXTUS*, and leap-year itself *ANNUS BISSEXTUS*.]

## V. ABBREVIATIONS.

## (1) PRAENOMINA.

A. Aulus	K. Kaeso	Q. Quintus
C. } Gaius	L. Lucius	S. (Sex.) Sextus
G. } Gaius	M. Marcus	Ser. Servius
Cn. } Gnaeus	M'. Manius	Sp. Spurius
Gn. } Gnaeus	Mam. Mamercus	T. Titus
D. Decimus	P. Publius	Ti. (Tib.) Tiberius.

*Note.*—A Roman of distinction had at least three names: the Praenomen, individual name; the Nomen, name showing the Gens or clan; and the Cognomen, surname showing the Familia or family. Thus, Lucius Junius Brutus expressed Lucius of the Gens Junia and Familia Brutorum. To these were sometimes added one or more Agnomina, titles either of honour (as Africanus, Macedonicus, Magnus, &c.), or expressing that a person had been adopted from another Gens, as Aemilianus, applied to the younger Scipio Africanus, who was the son of L. Paulus Aemilius, but adopted by a Scipio. The full name of the emperor Augustus (originally an Octavius) after he had been adopted by his uncle's will and adorned by the Senate with a title of honour, was Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus Augustus.

## (2) VARIA.

A. D. Ante diem	HS. Sestertius, Ses-	P. R. Populus Roma-
A. U. C. Anno urbis	tertium	nus
conditae	Id. Idus	Pl. Plebis
Aed. Aedilis	Imp. Imperator	Proc. Proconsul
Cal. (Kal.) Calendae	L. Libra	S. Senatus
Cos. Consul	LL. Dupondius	S. P. Q. R. Senatus
Coss. Consules	Non. Nonae	Populusque Roma-
D. Divus	O. M. Optimus Ma-	nus
Des. Designatus	ximus	S. C. Senatusconsultum
Eq. Rom. Eques Ro-	P. C. Patres (et) Con-	S. D. P. Salutem dicit
manus	scripti	plurimam
F. Filius	P. M. Pontifex Ma-	Tr. Tribunus.
	ximus	

## II. NOTES ON SYNTAX.

## I. AGREEMENT. § 88-92. § 156-160.

A. The Subject (§ 88) may be any Noun-term, § 87.

B. (1) The term Adjective (§ 89) includes Participles and Adjectival Pronouns.

(2) An Adjective agrees as Epithet with a Substantive: as Complement with any Noun-term.

(3) Adjectives are used as Substantives (§ 156): 1. In the Masc. Sing. and Pl., *man* or *men* being implied: as, *amicus*, a friend; *sapiens*, a wise man; *stultus*, a fool; *boni*, good men; *multi*, many; *plurique*, most. 2. In the Neut. Sing. abstractly: as, *Honestum* et *utile*, morality and expediency.—*Cic.* *Triste* lupus *stabulis*, the wolf is a bane to the stalls.—*VERG.* 3. In the Neut. Pl., *things* being implied: as, *multa*, many things; *omnia*, all things.

C. The term Substantive (§ 90) includes all Noun-terms. A Substantive may be in Apposition to any Noun-term, as Appositive Epithet or Complement. An Apposite usually agrees in Number also with its Noun, sometimes in Gender: as, *Usus magister egregius.*—PLIN. *Vita rustica parsimoniae magistra est.*—CIC.

D. The use of the Relative (§ 91) may be illustrated by placing it between two Noun-terms, with the former of which it agrees in Gender, Number, and Person, with the latter in Case: as,

- (1) *Vir quem virum vides rex est* (Full Form).
- (2) *Vir quem . . . . vides rex est* (Usual Form).
- (3) . . . *quem virum vides rex est.*
- (4) . . . *quem . . . . vides rex est.*

But it may refer to any Noun-term of any Person, as *ego, nos, tu, vos, &c.*

E. Figures varying Agreement (§ 158–160) are:—

1. Ellipsis, which omits words: (1) Pronouns, as *aiunt, they say*: (2) Substantives, as *Falernum, Falernian* (vinum, wine), *gelida* (aqua) *cold water*; *Ad Junonis, to Juno's* (templum, temple). (3) Verbs, especially the Copulants *est, sunt.* See § 158.

The opposite of Ellipsis is Emphasis, which throws stress on words: as, *Ego reges eieci, vos tyrannos introducitis, I expelled kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.*—LIV.

2. Attraction, which removes Agreement from the usual word to some other: as, *Amantium irae amoris integratio est, the quarrels of lovers are the renewal of love.*—TER.; where *est* agrees with the Complement *integratio*, not with the Subject *irae*.

3. Synthesis, which occurs when words have one Gender or Number in form, another in meaning, and when the construction is made to agree with the meaning: as, *Capita conjurationis securi percussi sunt, the heads of the conspiracy were decapitated.*—LIV. *Pars epulis onerant mensas, part load the tables with viands.*—VIRG. Singular Nouns with Plural sense, as *pars, juvenus, turba, multitudo, nobilitas, plebs, populus, civitas, vulgus, etc.,* are called *Collectiva, Collective Nouns, or Nouns of Multitude.*

F. 1. A Composite Subject (§ 92) is one which contains two or more Noun-terms. The rule holds good, whether the Nouns are linked by Conjunctions, or without Conjunctions (by *Asyndeton*), or united by the Preposition *cum*. So, *Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, Quirinus with his brother Remus will give laws.*—VIRG.

2. A Singular Verb may be used with a Composite Subject when the Nouns form one notion: as, *Senatus populusque intelligit.*—CIC.

3. The Verb may agree with one of the Nouns, and be understood with the others: as, *Convicta est Messalina et Silius, Messalina was convicted, and Silius.*—TAC.

4. As the first Person is prior to the second, and the second to the third, so the Masculine Gender is held in Grammar superior to the Feminine. (1. 2.)

G. Upon Impersonal Verbs, see § 157, also § 75, &c.

## II. CASES OF SUBJECT AND COMPLEMENT. § 93-94.

A. These rules show (1) that the Subject of a Verb Finite is a Nominative; (2) that the Subject of an Infinitive is an Accusative; (3) that the Complement of a Copulative Verb, Finite or Infinitive, agrees, if a single Adjective, attributively with the Subject, if a single Substantive, appositively with the Subject, except in a few peculiar instances (§ 108, § 127). The Complement, in two examples of Rule § 94, follows a Finite Copulative Verb, and agrees with a Nominative Subject; in two others it follows an Infinitive Copulative Verb, prolatively used, and agrees with a Nominative Subject; in the last two it follows an Infinitive Copulative Verb, obliquely used, and agrees with an Accusative Subject.

B. The Verb *sum* may be completely Predicative, not Copulative, if it denotes absolute existence: as, *Jam seges est, ubi Troja fuit, now corn is, where Troy was.*—Ov.

## III. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE. § 95-103.

A. When the Verb is Transitive (§ 96), the construction is often without sense until a word is added to express that on which the Verb acts. This is called the Object (or Nearer Object), and stands in the Accusative Case. Thus *Romulus condidit, Romulus founded*, is incomplete in sense until we add *Romam, Rome*. Transitive Verbs may be called *Quid-Verbs*. How to change a Transitive Active Sentence into Passive form, see XIV. E. 1.

B. (1) Transitive Verbs are sometimes used intransitively; as, *Jam verterat fortuna, fortune had now turned.*—Liv. (2) More often Intransitive Verbs become transitive: as, *Flet necem filii, he weeps for his son's death*. (3) The Compound of an Intransitive Verb is often transitive: as, *Hostes urbem circumsedent, the enemies surround the city*. (4) Passive Verbs used reflexively sometimes become transitive, like Deponents: as, *Exuitur cornua, she puts off her horns.*—Ov. Hence such constructions as *Nodo sinus collecta fluentes, having gathered up in a knot her flowing folds.*—Virg.

C. The Verbs which take double Accusative (thing and person) (§ 98) are *doceo* (and its compounds), *rogo*, *interrogo*, *oro*, *exoro*, *posco*, *flagito*, *percontor*, and, in Horace, *laccio*. Sometimes *celo, conceal*. They may be called *Quem-Quid Verbs*. In Passive construction the Accusative of the thing remains: *Quid tu docearis a me litteras? why should you be taught letters by me?*

D. Factitive or *Quid-Quale Verbs* (§ 99) are such as may be said *to make* (*facere*) a thing to be of a certain character, by deed, word, or thought: as, (1) *facio, efficio, reddo, praesto, creo, lego, eligo, &c.*; (2) *dico, voco, memoro, praedico, nomino, nuncupo, declaro, usurpo, appello, saluto, &c.*; (3) *aestimo, numero, credo, existimo, puto, duco, judico, habeo, censeo, agnosco, invenio, reperio, deprehendo, &c., &c.* They are the Active forms of those which in the Passive are Copulative Verbs. In their construction *esse* may be mentally supplied between the Object and Complement. Factitive Construction in the Passive becomes Copulative; *Fis dea a nobis, Fortuna: A Romulo urbs sua Roma vocata est,*

*E.* The Accusative of Respect or Nearer Description (100) is seldom used in prose, except when it contains Pronominal or semi-adverbial expressions: as, *Illud doleo*; *Hoc laetor*; *Cetera assentior Crasso*, in other things I agree with Crassus.—CIC.

*F.* (1) Many Grammarians deem the original force of the Accusative Case to be, that it marks the limit or object of motion. § 101. (2) The Prepositions in, ad, are generally used by prose writers, if motion to other places than towns or small islands is mentioned.

#### IV, THE DATIVE CASE. § 104-109.

*A.* Words whose sense is incomplete without reference to a Recipient (105) are called Trajective. Thus *carus*, *dear*, necessarily implies, *dear to some one*; *dare*, *to give*, necessarily implies not only a thing given, but a person to whom it is given. Trajective words take a Dative of this object of reference. Verbs of this sort, if they take a Dative only (as *parco*, *faveo*, *irascor*, &c.), are purely Trajective or Cui-Verbs: if they take an Accusative also, they are Trajective-Transitive, or Cui-Quid Verbs, as *do*, *narro*, *spondeo*, &c.

*B.* The fundamental notion of the Dative (§ 106) seems to be Nearness, with its opposite Remoteness. The First Class, then, of Trajective words is composed of those which contain the ideas of *nearness* and *remoteness*, *presence* and *absence*, *affinity* and *non-affinity*, *custom* and *strangeness*, *fitness* and *unfitness*, *likeness* and *unlikeness*, *agreement* and *disagreement*, *union* and *disunion*, *comparison* and *contrast*. Next, *shewing* and *being shewn* is the bringing near or being brought near to the eye, ear, or (generally) to the mind. Herein we include the Second Class, words of *utterance* and *silence*, *narration* and *concealment*, *affirmation* and *denial*, *evidence* and *obscurity*, *persuasion* and *dissuasion*. We are hence led on to the Third Class, a large body of words which express application or exhibition with the attendant notion of *favour* or *disfavour*. These comprise words which express *profit* and *harm*, *kindness* and *unkindness*, *bounty* and *stint*, *indulgence* and *grudging*, *help* and *obstruction*, *pleasing* and *displeasing*, *pardon* and *resentment*, *flattery* and *reviling*,  *blessing* and *malediction*, *compliance* and *resistance*, *promise* and *menace*, *gift*, *loan*, *present*, *payment*, *dedication*, and *refusal*; *delivery* and *withdrawal*; *faith* and *infidelity*, *trust* and *distrust*, *lawfulness* and *unlawfulness*, *ease* and *difficulty*. There are yet a few words, which share something of the character of both the two last-mentioned classes, and may conveniently form a Fourth Class. These are words which express *rule* and *subservience*, *command* and *obedience*.

*C.* The reason why many Verbs compounded with Particles (106 a.) become Trajective, is, that the Particle confers upon them one or other of the notions enumerated above: most frequently that of Nearness.

*D.* The reason why a Dative of that *for which* anything is or happens (Dativus Commodi vel Incommodi, § 107) may be attached to almost any predication, is because almost any action or state may be attended with some result to some Recipient; it may be *for* or *against* some one's interest; in some way *interesting* to some one. Thus *nubere* means 'to take the bridal veil,' and a bride is said, '*nubere viro*,' 'to take the veil *for* her husband,' that is, 'to marry him.' *Vacare* means 'to be void,' or 'empty:' hence, 'to be disengaged *for*,' that is, 'to have leisure *for*:'

as, vacare philosophiæ. Such constructions are far-fetched examples of the Trajectiva Gratiæ. Here, too, may be ranked the Dativus Ethicus, the Dative with sum, with Participles, Gerunds, &c. and perhaps the Dativus Rei pro Complemento.

*E.* Some Adjectives in the classes named prefer the construction of ad with Accusative to that of the Dative: such are natus, aptus, utilis, idoneus, paratus, rudis, &c. as, Ad laudem et ad decus nati sumus, *we are born to praise and glory.*—CIC. Others use in, erga, adversus: as, Acer in hostem, *spirited against the foe.*—VIRG. Benignus erga te fui, *I was kind towards you.*—PLAUT. Communis, proprius, affinis, similis, par, and some other Adjectives, take a Dative or a Genitive Case.

*F.* Some Verbs belonging in sense to the classes named above (*B*) are Quid-Verbs, not Cui-Verbs, and take Accusative and not Dative: as, juvo, jubeo, laedo, rego, gubernō. Multos castra juvant, *the camp delights many.* Animum rege, *rule the temper.*—HOR. Others use Dative or Accusative: as, tempero, moderor. The construction of Verbs varies considerably, owing to the use of Prepositions and other causes. Thus we find donare alicui munus and donare aliquem munere, invidere alicui, invidere rem alicui, invidere re aliquem. These varieties must be observed in reading.

*G.* The English Prepositions chiefly used in rendering the Latin Dative are *to* and *for*. But after some Adjectives and Verbs (iratus, succenseo, &c.) *with* must be used; after some Verbs (disto, aufero, &c.), *from*; after many Compound Verbs, *upon*, *into*, or *against*. Others, as parco, placeo, displiceo, medeor, &c., are rendered without introducing an English Preposition.

*H.* The Dative after a Finite Passive Verb is rare: as, Non intellegor ulli, *I am not understood by anybody.*—OV. So is the Dative after a Verb of motion: as, It clamor caelo, *a cry ascends to heaven.*—VIRG.

#### V. THE ABLATIVE CASE. § 110–125.

*A.* When the Ablative stands without a Latin Preposition, it is rendered with the help of various English Prepositions; namely, I. Cause, *by, for, from, through, with, at*. II. Instrument, *with, by*. III. Manner: *in, with, by*. IV. Condition: *with, in, upon*. V. Quality: *of, with*. VI. Respect, *in, by, with*. VII. Value or Price: *at, for, of, with*. VIII. Measure: *by*, or no Preposition. IX. Matter: *of, in, with, from, upon, for*, or no Preposition. X. Time: *at, in, within*, or no Preposition. XI. *A.* Place by which: *by, along, upon, through*. *B.* Place where: *at, in, upon* (humi). *G.* Place from which: *from*. XII. (See Prepositions). XIII. Separation and Origin: *from, of*. XIV. Thing compared: *than*.

*B.* The use of the Simple Ablative in most of these meanings is varied considerably by the introduction of Latin Prepositions. Thus Cause may be expressed by *ab, de, ex, prae*; also by *ob, per, propter*, with Accusative. Agent requires *a, ab*; while Instrument is without Preposition. Manner without an Epithet requires '*cum*,' (except in a few phrases, such as, *vi, fraude, jure, injuriâ, ritu, silentio, arte, ordine, &c.*). Thus, *I speak with grief*, or *he writes with diligence*, cannot be rendered *dolore loquor, diligentia scribit*, but *cum dolore loquor* (or *dolens loquor*), *cum diligentia scribit* (or *diligenter scribit*).



If an Epithet is joined to this Ablative, the Preposition is often used, often omitted; and observation must determine the choice of construction: as, *Cato summā contentione dixit, Cato spoke with the utmost energy.*—CIC. *Magnā cum curā atque diligentīā scripsit, he wrote with great care and diligence.*—CIC.

C. The Case of Quality, whether Ablative or Genitive, requires an Epithet.

D. The Ablative of Price is used with Verbs and Adjectives implying *sale, purchase, dearness, cheapness, cost, &c.* *Muto, I change,* may have Accusative of what is left, and Ablative of what is taken, or (in poetry) the converse. Thus *mutare urbem exilio,* and *mutare urbe exilium* may equally mean '*to quit the city and go into banishment.*' *Pretio* is often dropt: as, *magno, dear; parvo, vili, cheap.*

E. The Ablative of Measure defines Verbs and Adjectives of Extent and Degree, especially Comparative and Superlative Words: and for this purpose in particular are used the Pronominal Ablatives *hoc, eo, quo, altero, tanto, quanto, aliquanto*: also *paulo, multo, duplo, dimidio, nihilo, nimio, &c.*: as, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt, the more they have, the more they desire.*

F. The use of Prepositions in defining Time (§ 120) is frequent: as, *Sol binas in singulis annis reversiones facit, the sun makes two turns in each year.*—CIC. *De die, before the close of day. De nocte, before the close of night. De multā nocte, long before the close of night. Sub vesperum, on the approach of evening. Diem ex die expecto, I wait day after day.* *In* is usually prefixed to an Ablative of time when a numeral Adverb is annexed: as, *Quidam oves in anno bis tondent, some shear sheep twice a year.*—VARR.

G. 1. Generally *Place where* (§ 121 B.) is expressed with *in*: as, *In portu navigo, I am sailing in harbour.*—SEN. *In* is omitted in certain phrases: as, *loco (in the stead), multis locis, pluribus locis, &c.; hoc libro, alio libro, &c.; terrā marique; or where totus is used: as, totā Asiā, in all Asia, dextrā (parte), on the right hand, laevā, sinistrā, on the left hand.* The poets are more free in the omission: as, *Silvisque agrisque viisque corpora foeda jacent, in forests and fields and roads, lie revolting corpses.*—OV. But this licence needs discrimination. When a work is quoted *in* is used: as, *in Iliade Homeri; in Andriā Terentii; in Gorgiā Platonis;* but when the author only is cited, *apud; apud Homerum; apud Terentium; apud Platonem (in Homer, &c.).*

2. That the seeming Genitive, *Romae, Corinthi, &c.,* (§ 121 B. a.) is not strictly such, was perceived by ancient Grammarians, who call it an Adverb. But if we notice that it ends in *i*, *Romai (Romae), militiai (militiae) Mileti, domi, humi, belli;* and compare the old forms of place in the Third Declension ending in *i*, *ruri, Lacedaemoni*—NEP.; *Carthagini*—LIV.; *Tiburi*—CIC., &c.; we cannot doubt the original existence in the Latin language, as in the Sanskrit, of a Locative Case ending in *i* Singular, in *s* Plural.

3. Prepositions are much used with names of towns: as, *In Epheso est. In Ephesum abii. Ex Epheso huc litteras misi, I sent a letter to this place from Ephesus.*—PLAUT. *Has litteras a Brundisio dedit, this letter he dated from Brundisium.*—CIC.

H. The usage of Verbs and Participles of Separation and Origin (§ 123) must be carefully observed, some of them taking or omitting the Preposition in prose: as, arceo, cedo, moveo, pello, prohibeo, summoveo, removeo: others requiring a Preposition in prose, but not in poetry; as, alieno, discedo, disjungo, dispello, disto, divello, repello, reporto, rejicio, segrego, secerno, separo, &c. The chief Participles are natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, editus, oriundus, &c.

K. 1. The Case of the word with which the Ablative is compared (§ 124) is much oftener a Nominative than an Accusative. In comparison with other cases quam must be used: as, Nulli flebilior quam tibi, Vergili, *to none more a cause of weeping than to thee, Vergilius.*—HOR. Flagiti magis nos pudet quam erroris, *we are more ashamed of the crime than of the blunder.*—CIC. And, in general, for the sake of perspicuity: as, Segnius homines bona quam mala sentiunt, *men feel blessings less keenly than evils.*—LIV.

2. After plus, amplius, minus, an ellipse of quam often occurs before Numerals: as, Romani paulo plus sexcenti ceciderunt, *of the Romans rather more than 600 fell.*—LIV. Unus is omitted: as, Quinctius tecum plus annum vixit, *Quinctius lived with you more than a year.*—CIC.

L. 1. The Ablative Absolute (§ 125) being an abridged Clause, the Participle may often be transformed into a Finite Verb with Conjunction. Thus, in the example, Regibus exactis = postquam reges exacti sunt.

2. A common instance of Substantive put Absolutely with Substantive is that of *consule* or *consulibus*: as, Caninio consule scito neminem prandisse, *in the consulship of Caninius you must know that nobody dined.*—CIC.

## VI. THE GENITIVE CASE. § 126-136.

A. 1. The Genitive is Subjective when it limits a Noun like an Attribute; Objective when it limits it like an Object. It is the same thing to say, Sullanus exercitus, or Sullae exercitus, *the army of Sulla*; flamen Martialis, or flamen Martis, *the priest of Mars*; on the other hand, cupido pecuniae is nearly the same as cupere pecuniam. But Adjectives are even used for the Objective Genitive: as, bellum regium for bellum contra regem; timor externus for timor exterorum. So the Possessive Pronouns; as, Desiderium vestrum ferre non possum, *I cannot bear the want of you.*—CIC. 'Native of a place' is expressed by an Adjective derived from the place: as, Dionysius Halicarnassensis, for Dionysius Halicarnassi natus, *Dionysius of Halicarnassus.*

2. The Possessive Genitive is rendered in English either by *of* or the Genitive in 's': as, Philippi filius, 'son of Philip,' or 'Philip's son.'

3. Instar (an undeclined Substantive meaning *likeness*) stands (with a Genitive) in apposition to a Substantive: as, Instar montis equum, *a horse resembling a mountain.*—VIRG.

B. (1) Some suppose interest to be for inter rem est, rēfert for rem fert, and mea, &c., to be corruptions of meam, &c. (§ 129). (2) These Verbs may be qualified by the Genitives of Value, magni, parvi, pluris, tanti, quanti: as, Utriusque nostrum magni interest ut te videam, *it is of great importance to both of us that I see you.*—CIC.

C. 1. The Genitivus Rei Distributæ (§ 130) and Genitivus Rei Demensæ (§ 131) are so far the same, as that each is a divided whole; but the former is numerically or quotatively divided, the latter quantitatively: the former is Plural unless it be a Collective Noun; the latter usually, but not always, Singular. The Partitive words which distribute the former Genitive are (α) Pronominals: as, alius, alter, uter, uterque, utervis, uterlibet, ullus, nullus, nemo, plerique, multi, pauci, ceteri, reliqui, solus, qui, quis, quicumque, quisquis, quisque, unusquisque, tot, quot, quæcumque, quotusquisque, quisnam, quisquam, aliquis, quidam, quispiam, &c. (β) Numerals, Cardinal and Ordinal: unus, primus: duo, secundus, &c.; also princeps, medius. (γ) Comparative and Superlative Adjectives; the former distributing two things: as, Major Neronum; or one class into two parts: as, Avium loquacioris, *the noisier sort of birds*.—PLIN. Also Superlative Adverbs, in which Gender cannot appear. (δ) Any Adjective, Participle, or Substantive which can imply a distributive meaning: as, Sancte deorum; lecti juvenum; piscium feminae.

2. Partitives are sometimes attracted in Gender from the Genitive to the Subject: as, Indus est omnium fluminum maximus, *the Indus is the largest of all rivers*.—CIC. Or varied by Synesis: as Dulcissime rerum, *dearest of beings*.—HOR.

3. A Collective Noun is distributed: as, Plato totius Graeciae doctissimus fuit, *Plato was the most learned man of all Greece*.—CIC.

4. This Genitive forms a Complement: as, Fies nobilium tu quoque fontium, *thou too shalt become one of the renowned fountains*.—HOR.

5. Adverbs of Place, ubi, quo, eo, nusquam, &c. are Partitively used with the Genitives gentium, locorum, terrarum, &c.: as, Nusquam gentium, *nowhere in the world*.—LIV.

6. Primus, ultimus, summus, imus, extremus, and other like Adjectives are used as Epithets with Partitive force: as, Primā luce summus mons a Labieno tenebatur, *at break of day the top of the mountain was occupied by Labienus*.—CAES.

D. Among Quantitative words governing a Genitive (§ 131) are, nihil, satis, affatim, abunde, nimis, partim, minus, minimum, parum, aliud, id, illud, hoc, idem, quod, quid, aliquid, quidquid, quidquam, multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, aliquantum, nimium, dimidium. They are usually rendered in English as agreeing with the thing measured: as, nimium pecuniae (*too much money*); nihil mali (*no evil*). They may also be followed by the Genitive of an Adjective of the Second Declension; but an Adjective of the Third is commonly put in the same Case with the word of Quantity: as, Ne quid falsi dicere audeas, ne quid veri non audeas, *you should dare to say nothing false, nothing true not dare to say*.—CIC. Nec viget quicquam simile aut secundum, *and nothing exists like or in second rank*.—HOR.

E. Among poetic Genitives (§ 135) are these: (1) Cause: as, Laudabat leti juvenem, *he praised the young man for his death*. (2) Respect: as, O seri studiorum, *O late in your studies*. (3) Dominion: as, Daunus agrestium regnavit populorum, *Dawnus ruled over rustic tribes*, &c.

## VII. THE VERB INFINITIVE. § 140-144.

A. The Infinitive used in direct predication (§ 140, 2.) is called the Historic Infinitive. It appears in poetry as well as in prose narrative, (a) in passages descriptive of strong emotion; (b) where various actions take place simultaneously or in immediate sequence; (c) in actions interrupted, and from time to time repeated. It is analogous to the ellipse of the Copula; in fact, both constructions occur together: as, *Ceterum facies totius negotii varia, incerta, foeda atque miserabilis; dispersi a suis pars cedere, alii insequi: neque signa neque ordines observare: ubi quemque periculum ceperat, ibi resistere ac propulsare; arma, tela, equi, viri, hostes, cives permixti; nihil consilio neque imperio agi; fors omnia regere, now the aspect of the whole affair was confused, indecisive, shocking, and pitiable. Parties scattered from their comrades were some retiring, others advancing; observing neither standards nor ranks; where peril encountered each man, there was he resisting and repelling; arms, darts, steeds, men, foes, countrymen were intermingled; nothing was proceeding by counsel or command; chance directed all.*—SALL. This Infinitive is not Present, but Imperfect.

B. 1. The Infinitive is called Prolative when it carries on the construction of Verbs which express *ability, desire, custom, beginning, ceasing, seeming, being thought, being said, &c.*; as, *possum, queo, nequeo, debeo, volo, nolo, malo, aveo, cupio, gestio, amo, soleo, coepi, incipio, statuo, pergo, conor, meditor, paro, cesso, desino, videor, putor, credor, feror, dicor, trador, memoror, &c.* Among these Verbs, those which are Copulative (*videor, credor, existimor, putor, dicor, narror, feror, trador, reperi, arguor, &c.*) are used personally with a Prolative Infinitive rather than impersonally with Accusative and Infinitive. Thus it is better Latin to say, *Videtur errasse Cicero*, than *Videtur errasse Ciceronem*; *Dicitur Homerus caecus fuisse*, than *Dicitur Homerum caecum fuisse*. The Participle Passive is often found in poetry after such Verbs with an ellipse of *esse*: as *Fertur Prometheus coactus, &c., Prometheus is said to have been compelled, &c.*—HOR. The law of this construction should be carefully observed.

2. The construction of a Prolative Infinitive with Adjectives abounds in poetry, especially lyric; as, *Audax omnia perpeti, bold to endure all things.*—HOR. *Fruges consumere nati, born to consume the fruits.*—HOR. In the best prose it is used but with few words; as, *Paratus, assuetus, &c.*; but Tacitus adopts it freely.

C. Under the Dative Gerund (§ 141, 3.) note the phrase, *non esse solvendo, to be insolvent*; and the use of the Dative Gerund and Gerundive in describing functions of office; as, *Triumviri agro dando, triumvirs for assigning land, &c.*

D. The Transitive Gerund is not always attracted (§ 143): as, *Efferor studio patres vestros videndi, I am rapt with the desire of seeing your sires.*—CIC. Especially when a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective is the Object: as, *Pars honesti versatur in tribuendo suum cuique, one branch of morality lies in giving each his own.*—CIC. *Parva non contemnendo majores nostri maximam hanc rem fecerunt, by not despising small things our ancestors made this commonwealth very great.*—LIV. But, as a general rule, the Gerundive attraction is used.

## VIII. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS. § 145.

A. Personal and Possessive Pronouns of the First and Second Persons may be used reflexively; that is, they may be referred to a Subject of *their own Person*. But *se* and *suus* differ from the rest, inasmuch as they cannot be used unless there be a Noun of their own (the Third) Person, expressed or understood, to which they are referred. Although we can say *amat me*, *he loves me*; *amat te*, *he loves thee*; we cannot say, *amo se*, *amas se*, but *amo eum*, *I love him*; *amas eum*, *thou lovest him*; not *culpo suum factum*, but *culpo ejus factum*, *I blame his deed*.

B. The reference of *se* or *suus* to the Object is not ambiguous (a) if the Pronoun is an adjunct to the Subject, as in the first and third examples under § 145, a.; (b) if the Subject is not of the Third Person, as in the second example; (c) if the context shows that the Pronoun cannot be referred to the Grammatical Subject: as, *Scipio suas res Syracusanis restituit*, *Scipio restored to the Syracusans their property*.—LIV. To suppose that *Scipio restored his own property* to the Syracusans would be absurd. The Object to which *se*, *suus*, are referred, usually precedes: except the Distributive Pronoun *quisque*, which, if so used, generally follows them. So, *Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam*, *his own character moulds each man's fortune*.—NEP. When *se*, *suus*, would be improper, in some places is used the Pronoun *is*, in others the Pronoun *ipse*: as, *Chilius te rogat, et ego ejus rogatu*, *Chilius requests you and I at his request*.—CIC. *Caesar milites in-cusavit cur de suā virtute et de ipsius diligentia desperarent*, *Caesar reproachfully asked his troops why they despaired of their own valour and of his carefulness*.—CAES.

## IX. THE CONJUNCTIVE MOOD. § 148.

The Indicative Mood states absolutely, the Conjunctive contingently. The Conjunctive is called *pure* when it is in the predication of a principal Sentence. Its *pure* uses are various:

- (1) Potential: as, *Ita amicos pares*, *thus you may get friends*.  
*Dixerit aliquis*, *some one may say*.
- (2) Conditional: „ *Velim tecum esse*, *I should wish to be with you*.  
*Crederes victos*, *you would have supposed them vanquished*.
- (3) Concessive: „ *Age dicat*, *well, he may speak*.  
*Fuerit sapiens*, *suppose he were wise*.
- (4) Optative: „ *Valeant cives mei*, *may my countrymen flourish!*  
*Ne vivam si &c.*, *may I not live if, &c.*
- (5) Dubitative: „ *Faveas tu hosti?* *must you favor a foe?*  
*Quid faciam?* *what am I to do?*
- (6) Hortative: „ *Imitemur bonos*, *let us imitate the good*.  
*Rem tuam curares*, *you should have been minding your own business*.

X. SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES, AND DEPENDENCE ON ORATIO OBLIQUA.  
§ 149–151.

I. Every Simple Sentence is either (1) a Statement (Enuntiatio), (2) a Command or Request (Petitio), or (3) a Question (Interrogatio). As (1) *Psittacus loquitur*, *the parrot speaks*. (2) *Loquere*,

psittace, *speak, parrot*. (3) Loquitur psittacus? *does the parrot speak?* When any of these is a Principal Sentence, it is said to be Direct (Recta Oratio); when it is a dependent Substantival Clause, it is said to be Oblique (Obliqua Oratio).

A Substantival Clause is one which may take the place of a Substantive (as Subject, Object, or Appositive), being (1) Oblique Enunciation, (2) Oblique Petition, (3) Oblique Interrogation.

(1) The principal form which Oblique Enunciation takes is the Accusative and Infinitive (§ 94.), which is either Subject of the Copula est or an Impersonal Verb, or Object of one of the Verba Sentiendi et Declarandi. Grammatical writers sometimes have this construction alone in view when they use the term Oblique Oration: but incorrectly; for it is but one, though the most important, form of Oblique Oration. As, *Facinus est vinciri civem Romanum, it is a crime for a Roman citizen to be put in chains.*—Cic. *Thales dixit aquam esse initium rerum, Thales said that water is the origin of the universe.*—Cic.

Constructions used for the Accusative and Infinitive are:

a. Ut, with Subjunctive; in Oblique Enunciation, implies *consequence, expediency, duty, necessity, custom, law, &c.* Quod, with Indicative (usually), implies *fact*: as,

Mea rēfert ut venias, *It is important to me that you come.*

Necesse est (ut) venias, *You must needs come.*

Oportet (ut) venias, *You ought to come.*

Expedit } ut civitates sua jura habeant.

Utile est } *It is expedient (useful) that the states have their rights.*

Gaudemus } quod civitates sua jura habent.

Gratum est } *We are glad that the states have their rights.*

b. Verbs of *hoping* and *promising* prefer the Accusative with Future Infinitive: as,

Spero te venturum (esse), *I hope that you will come.*

Pollicetur se venturum (esse), *he promises that he will come.*

c. After expressions of *fearing, danger, &c.*, ne means *lest*, ut *lest not*: as,

Metuo ne redeat, *I fear lest he return (=I fear he will return).*

Metuo ut redeat, *I fear lest he return not (=I fear he will not return).*

d. Interrogatio Infinitiva (or Accusative and Infinitive interrogatively used with ellipse of Finite Verb) asks an indignant question: as,

Mene incepto desistere? *What, I abandon my design?*

(2) Oblique Petition is formed when ut, ne, depend on Verbs of *entreating, commanding, forbidding, allowing, persuading, caring, endeavouring, effecting, preventing, &c.*: as, Oro ut venias; Cura ut valeas; Vide ne facias; Enitendum est ut vincamus, ne vincamus, &c. Fieri non potest ut veniam, *I cannot possibly come.* Ut and ne are often omitted: as, Precor reddas; fac venias; cave dicas; licet abeas, &c.

(3) Oblique Interrogation is formed by Interrogatives dependent on Verbs of *stating, enquiring, &c.* § 149. Here too an Interrogative sometimes falls out: as, *Interrogatur, tria pauca sint anne multa, It is questioned whether three things are few or many.*—CIC.

II. A Clause dependent on Oblique Oration may be called Sub-oblique (Subobliqua). A Clause is virtually Suboblique (Subobliquae potestatis), if it depends on Oratio Recta so constituted as to be virtually Oblique, that is, containing the statement of somebody's thought, judgment, or declaration. Thus, in the Compound Sentence, '*Laudat Africanum Panaetius, quod fuerit abstinens,*' the Principal Sentence, *Laudat, &c.*, is virtually Oblique, and the Clause, *quod, &c.*, virtually Suboblique: the sense being *Panaetius praises Africanus (=says Africanus is to be praised) because he was self-denying.* Hence *fuerit* is Subjunctive, although the Conjunction *quod* is one of the Second Class, to which the Indicative is appropriate.

## XI. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

A. An Adverbial Clause modifies the Principal Sentence like an Adverb, and is introduced by Conjunctions (1) Consecutive, (2) Final, (3) Causal, (4) Temporal, (5) Conditional, (6) Concessive, (7) Comparative. Lists of these Conjunctions appear § 152.

Examples of Subjunctive in Adverbial Clauses:

- (1) *Non tam amens est ut eat, He is not so mad as to go.*  
*Non ita amens fuit ut iret, He was not so mad as to go.*  
*Adeo prudens est ut non ierit, He is so prudent that he went not.*  
*Tam catus erat ut nihil diceret, He was so shrewd as to say nothing.*  
*Tam catus fuit ut nihil dixerit, He was so shrewd that he said nothing.*  
*Tantum abest ut Romae sit, ut in Britanniam ierit,*  
*He is so far from being at Rome, that he has gone to Britain.*  
*Tantum abfuit ut Romae esset, ut in Britanniam ivisset,*  
*He was so far from being at Rome, that he had gone to Britain.*
- (2) *Edo ut vivam, I eat that I may live.*  
*Vivebant ut ederent, They lived that they might eat.*  
*Obedi rationi ne servias appetitui, obey reason, that you may not be a slave to appetite.*
- (3) *Quae cum ita sint, ibo, Since this is the case, I will go.*  
*Quae cum ita essent, ivi, Since this was the case, I went.*
- (4) *Expecta dum veniam, Wait till I come.*  
*Expectabam dum venirent, I was waiting till they came.*
- (5) *Oderint dum metuant, Let them hate provided they fear.*
- (6) *Ut peccet, carus est, Though he sin, he is dear.*  
*Quamvis peccasset, carus erat, Though he had sinned, he was dear.*
- (7) *Obtundis tanquam surdus sim, You stun me as if I was deaf.*  
*Obtundebas quasi surdus essem, You stunned me as though I were deaf.*





*B.* If the Perfect is Present-Past (*I have inquired*), it is strictly a Primary Tense, and should have Primary Consecution; but Cicero generally constructs it, even in that sense, with Historic Consecution.

XIV. ADDITAMENTA MEMORABILIA.

*A.* Negatives:—

*a.* Non, haud, deny: *nē* prohibits. Haud is chiefly used with Adjectives and Adverbs: *as, res haud dubia; haud temere, &c.* And with a few Verbs: *as, haud scio, haud dubito.*

*b.* Ne . . . quidem has the emphatic word or words between the Particles: *as, Ne tu quidem, not even you.* Either the Verb precedes with another Negative: *as, Non praetereundum est ne id quidem, even that should not be passed over.—Cic.*; or it follows without one: *as, Ne ad Catonem quidem provocabo, I will not appeal even to Cato.—Cic.* *Nēdum*, with Subjunctive, shows that something is denied a fortiori, when compared with what was denied before. See § 147.

*c.* The Pronominal words *quisquam, ullus, unquam, usquam, &c.*, are used with a Negative or Dubitative Particle: *as, non, haud, si, num, &c., quisquam, ullus, &c.* The Negative is contained in *nemo (ne-homo), nullus (ne ullus), nunquam, nusquam, nequiquam, nequaquam, &c.*

*d.* In Negative Consecutive Clauses are used *ut non, ut nemo, ut nullus, ut nunquam, ut nusquam, &c.*; but in Final Clauses *ne, ut ne, ne quis, ut ne quis, ne quando, ut ne quando, ne quo, ut ne quo, &c.*

*e.* Non quod (generally), non quo, non quin (always), take a Subjunctive.

*f.* For *et nemo*, write *nec quisquam*; for *et nihil, neque quicquam*; for *et nullus, neque ullus*; for *et nunquam, neque unquam, &c.*; for *aio non, nego.*

*g.* *Neque (nec)* is used for *et non*, except when the negative emphasis falls on a single word: *as, Quaestio difficilis est et non profutura.*

*h.* Non nihil, *something*; nihil non, *everything*; non nunquam, *sometimes*; nunquam non, *always, &c.*; non potui non ire, *I could not but go.*

*B.* Single and Double Questions.

*a. Single:* Nonnē expects the answer *Yes*; num, the answer *No*; -nē is indifferent; ān often implies *surprise*, expecting a negative answer.

*b. Double.* The forms are:

utrum . . . . .	an (or)
num . . . . .	an (or)
-ne . . . . .	an (or)
— . . . . .	an, anne (or).

A negation in the second member is *annon* or *necne*.

*a. Qualis est tua mens? potesne dicere? What sort of thing is your mind? can you tell?—Cic.*

*An tu me tristem esse putas? Do you think I am downcast?—PLAUT.*

*Num negare audes? Do you venture to deny?—Cic.*

*Canis nonne similis lupo est? Is not a dog like a wolf?—Cic.*

*b. Haec utrum abundantis an egentis signa sunt? Are these the tokens of one who abounds or lacks?—Cic.*

Num duas habetis patrias an est illa patria communis? *Have you two countries, or is this your common country?*—CIC.

Romamne venio an hic maneo an Arpinum fugio? *Do I come to Rome, or stay here, or flee to Arpinum?*—CIC.

Quaeram justum sit necne poëma, *I will enquire whether it be a true poem or not.*—HOR.

### C. Prepositions :

a. Tenus follows its Case, which is often a Genitive : as, Taurò tenus, *as far as Mount Taurus*; nutricum tenus, *as far as the breasts*.

b. Ante, circa, circum, circiter, citra, extra, infra, intra, juxta, pone, post, prope, supra, ultra, clam, coram, palam, super, subter, may be used as Adverbs.

c. Among idiomatic Phrases formed by Prepositions, observe : (1) Ad : ad tempus, *for a time*; ad multam noctem, *till late at night*; ad unum, *to a man*; ad tibiam canere, *to sing to the flute*; ad hoc, *furthermore*; ad extremum, *at the last*; ad summum, *in fine*; ad verbum, *word for word*; ad unguem, *to a nicety*; ad amussim, *accurately*; ad decem annos, *ten years hence*; servi ad remum, *slaves for rowing*; ad judices, *before the judges*; insignis ad laudem, *eminent in renown*; nihil ad te, *nothing compared with you*. (2) Per : per noctem, *during the night*; per litteras, *by letter*; per jocum, *in jest*; per deos te oro, *I pray you by the gods*; per me licet, *I give leave*; res per se expetenda, *a thing in itself desirable*. (3) A, ab : a fronte, *in the van*; a tergo, *in the rear*; a millibus passuum duobus, *two miles off*; prope abest a mari, *he is near the sea*; philosophus a Platone, *a Platonic philosopher*; hoc a me facit, *this is on my side*; proximus a rege, *next to the king*; ab animo aeger sum, *I am sick at heart*; a doctrinā instructus, *well informed*; servus a pedibus, *a footman*; a manu, *an amanuensis*. (4) De : de nocte, *in the night*; de die, *in the daytime*; de meo, *from my own purse*; de marmore, *of marble*; de more, *according to custom*; de industriā, *on purpose*; de novo, *afresh*; justis de causis, *for good reasons*; de Parthis triumphavit, *he triumphed over the Parthians*. (5) E, ex : diem ex die, *day after day*; ex pedibus laborat, *he has the gout in his feet*; e republicā, *for the good of the state*; heres ex asse, *universal heir*; ex improviso, *by surprise*; ex tempore, *offhand*; e vestigio, *suddenly*; e regione Massiliae, *opposite Marseilles*. (6) Prae : prae me beatus es, *you are happy compared with me*; prae dolore tacet, *he is silent from grief*. (7) Pro : pro foribus, *before the door*; pro certo, *for a fact*; pro viribus, *according to one's powers*; pro tuā humanitate, *such is your courtesy*; pro re natā, *in existing circumstances*; pro eo ac potui, *according to my ability*. (8) In : a. frumentum binis assibus in modium, *corn at two asses a peck*; dormire in lucem, *to sleep till daylight*; vocat me ad cenam in hortos in proximum diem, *he invites me to dine the next day in his pleasure-grounds*; in hunc modum locutus est, *he spoke in this wise*; in praesens, *for the time being*; in horas, *from hour to hour*; in aeternum, *for ever*; in universum, *generally*; in vicem, *in turns*. β. in incerto, *in doubt*; in praesenti, *at this moment*; is in aere meo est, *he is in my debt*; hic non modo in aere alieno nullo, sed in suis numis multis est, *this man is not only out of debt, but has much ready money of his own*; filius in manu patris, *a son in his father's power*; in tuā manu hoc est, *this is in your power*.

## D. Participles :

a. The Participles are important elements in Latin, as in Greek, construction. But the Latin language is less rich in Participles than the Greek.

b. A Participle is the Attribute of one that acts, or has acted, or will act ; of one that is being acted on, or has been acted on, or will be acted on : to which we must add, of one that is meet for being acted on. A Greek Verb regularly and fully conjugated has Participles (including the Verbal in *τέος*) representing all these categories ; but Latin Verbs with Active and Passive Conjugation have the first, third, fifth, and seventh (the Present Act., Future Act., Perfect Pass., and Gerundive) Participles, but want the second, fourth, and sixth, that is, the Perfect Active, Present Pass., and Future Pass. Participles. For the Gerundive must not be regarded as Future, though it may in some places contain the notion of future time.

c. Deponent Verbs Intransitive have three Participles : Present and Future, both of which are Active in form and sense, and Perfect, which is Passive in form, but Active in sense : as, labor, labens, lapsurus, lapsus. To these, Transitive Deponents add the Gerundive in *dus* : as, patior, patiens, passurus, passus, patiendus.

d. The want of a Perfect Participle Act., in Active Verbs, is supplied in Latin either by the Finite Verb Active, with Relative or Particle, or by an Ablative Absolute Passive : as, Tarquinius regem qui non tulerim, Sicinium feram? *Having refused to endure Tarquin as king, shall I endure Sicinius?*—LIV. Alexander, quum interemisset Clitum, vix a se manus abstinuit, *Alexander, having slain Clitus, hardly refrained from suicide.*—CIC. Pompeius, captis Hierosolymis, victor ex illo fano nihil attigit, *Pompeius, having taken Jerusalem, in the very hour of victory, meddled with nothing belonging to that temple.*—CIC.

e. The want of a Present Participle Passive is supplied by the Finite Passive Verb with Relative or Particle : as, Pueri, qui—quum—dum docentur, discunt = Greek *οἱ παῖδες διδασκόμενοι μαθάνουσι*, *Children by being taught learn*. Rarely the Perf. Participle takes a Present Passive sense : as, Sperata victoria (LIV.) = *victoria quae speratur*.

f. A Future Participle Passive is not often used even in Greek. In Latin the Finite Verb with Relative stands for it : as, Grata superveniet quae non sperabitur hora, *Welcome will arrive the hour that shall be never hoped for.*—HOR.

g. The Perfect Participles of some Deponent and Semi-Deponent Verbs are occasionally found in a Present Active sense : as, ausus, fisus, diffisus, gavisus, ratus, solitus, usus, veritus : as, Cæsar, veritus ne noctu hostes profugerent, duas legiones in armis excubare jubet, *Cæsar, fearing the enemy would escape in the night, ordered two legions to keep watch under arms.*—CÆS. See § 62 Note.

h. Many Participles are used as mere Adjectives : as, negligens, patiens, sapiens, doctus, venerandus, tremendus, &c. Many appear as

Substantives. Such are, *amans, adolescens, sponsus; nupta, sponsa, coeptum, dictum, factum, praeceptum, &c.* The nouns, *man, men, thing, &c.*, are frequently to be understood with Participles: as, *Jacet corpus dormientis ut mortui, The body of a sleeping person often lies as of one dead.*—CIC. *Grande locuturi nebulas Helicone legunto, They that would utter a sublime strain must cull mists from Helicon.*—PERS. *Male parta male dilabuntur, Ill gotten, ill go.*—CIC. *Beatos duco, qui aut faciunt scribenda, aut scribunt loquenda, I deem them happy, who either do things fit to be written, or write things fit to be spoken.*—PLIN. See § 142. Also § 107 d.

### E. Active and Passive Construction :

a. When an Active Transitive Sentence is changed into Passive Construction, the Object becomes Subject, and the Subject becomes Ablative of the Agent: as,

ACT. *Egregie consul rem gessit.*

PASS. *Egregie ab consule res gesta est.*

*The consul conducted the affair excellently.*—LIV.

b. When an Active Intransitive Sentence is changed into Passive Construction, that Construction is Impersonal; the Subject becoming Ablative of the Agent. as,

ACT. *Hostes constanter pugnabant.*

PASS. *Ab hostibus constanter pugnabatur.*

*The enemy fought steadily.*—CAES.

c. If the Active Verb had a Genitive, Dative, or Ablative Case with it, the Passive Construction retains that Case: as,

ACT. *Medicinae nos indigemus.*

PASS. *Medicinae a nobis indigetur.*

*We need medicine.*—CIC.

ACT. *Mihi isti nocere non possunt.*

PASS. *Mihi ab istis noceri non potest.*

*They cannot hurt me.*—CIC.

ACT. *Litibus et jurgiis supersedere vos aequum est.*

PASS. *Litibus et jurgiis supersederi a vobis aequum est.*

*It is fair for you to abandon strife and wrangling.*—LIV.

(a) The Ablative of the Agent, like a Pronoun Subject, is often understood in the Impersonal Construction; as, *Itur in antiquam silvam, They go into an ancient forest.*—VERG. *Nunc est bibendum, Now we must drink.*—HOR.

(b) Hence it appears that Passive Verbs govern the same Cases as Active Verbs, except only the Accusative of the Object.

(c) Quasi-Passive Verbs (§ 72) have the construction of Verbs Passive; as, *Testis ab reo fustibus vapulavit, The witness was beaten with cudgels by the defendant.*—QUINT. *Malo a cive spoliari quam ab hoste venire, I would rather be stript by a citizen, than be sold by a foe.*—QUINT.

### F. Summary of Impersonal Construction :

#### a. Case-construction.

(1) Accusative of Person with Genitive of Thing :

*Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret.* § 134.

## (2) Accusative of the Object :

Oportet, taedet, piget, pudet, paenitet, decet, dedecet, delectat, juvat, fallit, fugit, are Transitive.

## (3) Dative :

Libet, licet, liquet, patet, accidit, contingit, convenit, evenit, expedit, placet, restat, vacat, opus est, necesse est, are Transitive.

(4) *Ad* with Accusative : attinet, pertinet, conducit.

## b. Subject-construction.

## (1) Verb-noun Infinitive :

Oportet, opus est, taedet, piget, pudet, paenitet, decet, dedecet, libet, licet, attinet, pertinet, contingit, convenit, expedit, placet, praestat, restat, vacat, delectat, juvat, interest, refert, necesse est.

## (2) Infinitive Clause (Enunciatio Obliqua) :

Oportet, opus est, decet, dedecet, licet, liquet, patet, attinet, pertinet, accidit, contingit, convenit, placet, praestat, restat, juvat, fallit, fugit, interest, refert, constat, necesse est.

(3) Subjunctive Clause with *ut* (for Infinitive Clause) :

Oportet, opus est, licet, accidit, contingit, evenit, est, fit, expedit, placet, praestat, restat, interest, refert, necesse est.

(4) Subjunctive Clause omitting *ut* :

Oportet, licet, necesse est.

(5) Indicative Clause with *quod* (for Infinitive Clause) :

Piget, pudet, poenitet, taedet, miseret, accidit, delectat, juvat, fallit, fugit, interest, refert.

## (6) Subject included in the meaning of the Verb :

Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret : also Impersonals implying changes of season and weather : as, pluit, tonat, fulgurat, &c., and Passive Impersonals. See *E. b. c.*

## (a) The following Deponent Perfects are occasionally used :

Pertaesum est ; pigitum est ; puditum est ; miseritum est ; libitum est ; licitum est ; placitum est.

(b) The following Verbs joined with Impersonal Infinitives become Impersonal : coepit, debet, desinit, potest, solet, incipit : as, *Pigere eum facti coepit, he began to be sorry for the act.*—**JUST.** *Perveniri ad summa, nisi ex principiis, non potest, the highest things cannot be reached, except from principles.*—**QUINT.**

## G. Summary of Rules for Time, Place, and Space :

a. (1) Time *during* which :

Accusative ; Accus. with *per* ; rarely Ablative.

(2) Time *at* which, *within* which, &c. :

Ablative ; Prepositions with their Cases.

b. (1) Place *where* :

Ablative with *in* ; Accusative with *ad* or *apud*.

But if town, small island, or domus, humus, militia, bellum, rus:  
Singular Case in *ae, i* or *e*; Plural Case in *is* or *ibus*,  
without a Preposition: as, Romae, militiae, Corinthi,  
domi, humi, belli, ruri, Tibure, Athenis, Gadibus, &c.

(2) Place *whither*:

Accusative with *ad* or *in*.

But if town, small island, domus, rus, &c.:

Accusative without Preposition usually.

(3) Place *whence*:

Ablative with *ab* or *ex*.

But if town, small island, domus, rus, &c.:

Ablative without Preposition usually.

c. (1) Space intervening:

Accusative; as, Aberam ab Amano iter unius diei, *I was one day's journey from Amanus.*—CIC.

Or Ablative of Measure; as, Aesculapii templum quinque millibus passuum ab Epidaurō distat, *the temple of Aesculapius is five miles from Epidaurus.*—LIV.

(2) Space traversed:

Accusative; as, Millia tum pransi tria repimus, *then after dining we creep on three miles.*—HOR.

(3) Space of measurement:

Accusative, § 102; or Ablative, § 118; or Genitive of Quality; as, Areas latas pedum denum facito, *you must make barn-floors ten feet wide.*—COLUM.

### III. NOTES ON PROSODY.

METRE:—

A. (a) Dactylic Hexameter or Senarius.

This Metre has six feet. The first four may be Dactyls or Spondees. The fifth must be a Dactyl (rarely a Spondee). The sixth a Spondee.

*Scheme.*

1	2	3	4	5	6
- - -	- - -	- - -	- - -	- - -	- -

*Examples.*

1. Sīcēlī|dēs Mū|sae || paū|lō ma|jōrā cā|nēmus.

2. Nōn ōm|nēs ār|būstā || jū|vānt hūmī|lēsquē mÿ|rīcae.

A break in the words, called *Caesura*, is usually made after the first syllable of the third foot, as after *-sae*, in (1). This is called a *strong* *Caesura*. If the break occurs after the second syllable of a Dactyl, as after *-ta* in (2), it is called a *weak* *Caesura*. Occasionally,

the chief Caesura occurs after the first syllable of the fourth foot, as in the following verse :

Clāmō|rēs sīmūl | hōrrēn | dōs || ād | sīdērǎ | tōllit.

The Heroic Measure of Epic poets, Virgil, Lucan, &c., consists of Dactylic Hexameters only.

(b) Dactylic Pentameter :

This Verse consists of two parts, called Penthemimers, which are kept distinct. The first Penthemimer contains two feet (Dactyls or Spondees) and a long syllable. The second contains also two feet (both Dactyls) and a long syllable.

*Scheme.*

1                    2                    1                    2  
 - ∪ ∪ | - ∪ ∪ | - || - ∪ ∪ | - ∪ ∪ | -

*Example.*

Tū pătēr | ēt mā|tēr || tū mīhī | frătēr ě|rās.

This Verse is not used alone, but follows an Hexameter in the Elegiac Distich : as,

Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos,  
 Tempora si fuerint nubila, solus eris.

The chief Elegiac poets are Ovid, Tibullus, and Propertius.

B. (a) Iambic Trimeter or Senarius :

This Metre has six feet. Each may be an Iambus : as,

Sūs | ět ĩp|sǎ Rō|mǎ vī|rībūs | rūit.

But a Spondee may stand in the first, third, and fifth foot ; and (rarely) a Dactyl or Anapaest (∪ ∪ -) in the first. A Tribrach (∪ ∪ ∪) sometimes takes the place of an Iambus, except in the two last feet.

*Scheme.*

1                    2                    3                    4                    5                    6  
 ∪ -                ∪ -                ∪ -                ∪ -                ∪ -                ∪ -  
 - -                - -                - -                - -                - -                - -  
 ∪ ∪ ∪            ∪ ∪ ∪            ∪ ∪ ∪            ∪ ∪ ∪            ∪ -                ∪ -  
 - ∪ ∪            - ∪ ∪            - ∪ ∪            - ∪ ∪            - ∪ ∪            - ∪ ∪  
 ∪ ∪ -            ∪ ∪ -            ∪ ∪ -            ∪ ∪ -            ∪ ∪ -            ∪ ∪ -

*Examples.*

Lābūn|tūr āl|tīs || ĩn|tērīm | rīpīs | āquae.  
 Cānīdī|ǎ brėvī|būs || ĩm|plīcā|tǎ vī|pēris.  
 Pōsītōs|quē vēr|nās || dī|tīs ēx|āmēn | dōmus.

The usual Caesura is after the first syllable of the third foot. Another, less usual, is after the first syllable of the fourth foot ; as,

Ībē|rīcīs | pērūs|tē || fū|nībūs | lātus.

The Trimeter may form a distinct measure.

## (b) Iambic Dimeter.

This Verse leaves out the third and fourth feet of the Trimeter, with which it is used to form an Iambic Distich; as,

Pătēr|nă rŭ|ră bō|bŭs ēx|ērcēt | sŭis,  
Sōlŭ|tŭs ōm|nī fē|nōre.

Horace uses this and also the single Trimeter in his Epodes.

## C. The Sapphic Stanza :

This Stanza contains four lines. The three first are the same Verse repeated (Sapphicus Minor). The fourth is called Versus Adonius.

*Scheme.*

1.	- ∪	- -	- ∪ ∪	- ∪	- ∪
2.	- ∪	- -	- ∪ ∪	- ∪	- ∪
3.	- ∪	- -	- ∪ ∪	- ∪	- ∪
4.			- ∪ ∪	- ∪	

*Example.*

1. Ōtī|ŭm dī | vōs rōgāt | īn pǎ|tēnti
2. Prēnsŭs | Aēgāē|ō sīmŭl | ātrǎ | nŭbes
3. Cōndī|dīt lŭ|nām nēquē | cērtǎ | fŭlgent
4. Sīdērǎ | nautis.

## D. The Alcaic Stanza :

This Stanza contains four lines: of which the two first are similar.

*Scheme.*

1.	- -	∪ -	-	- ∪ ∪	- ∪ ∪
2.	- -	∪ -	-	- ∪ ∪	- ∪ ∪
3.	- -	∪ -	- -	∪ -	-
4.	- ∪ ∪	- ∪ ∪	- ∪	- ∪	

*Example.*

- Ēheŭ | fŭgā|cēs | Pōstŭmĕ | Pōstŭme  
Lābŭn|tŭr ān|nī | nēc pīē|tās mōram  
Rŭgīs | ēt īn|stāntī | sēnēc|tae  
Affĕrēt | īndōmī | tāēquē | mōrti.

Models of the Sapphic and Alcaic Stanzas, with other Lyric Metres, are found in the Odes of Horace. Rules for their elegant construction are given in the Grammar.



## GLOSSARIUM GRAMMATICUM.



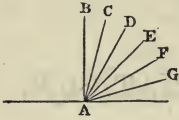
[N. E., Notes on Etymology. N. S., Notes on Syntax. N. P., Notes on Prosody. An Asterisk marks the new terms adopted in this Book.]

## A.

- Ablativus* (auferre, *to take away*), the Ablative Case, so called from one of its uses (Departure). § 110–125. See *Case*.
- Absolutus Ablativus* (absolvere, *to release*), the Ablative Absolute, because it stands *released*, as it were, from government. § 125.
- Accusativus* (accusare, *to accuse*), the Accusative Case, because the accused is the *Object* of prosecution. Gr. αἰτιατικὴ πτώσις. § 95.
- Activa Vox* (agere, *to do*), the Active Voice of Verbs, expresses ‘doing.’
- Adjectivum*, Adjective (quod *adjicitur* Substantivo). Gr. ἐπίθετον, *epithet*. §§ 32, 87, 89.
- Adjectival Clauses*. N. S. XII.
- Adverbial Clauses*. N. S. XI.
- Adverbium*, Adverb, ‘quia ad Verbum est’ Gr. ἐπίρρημα. §§ 9, 37, 82.
- Alphabet*, the Letters of a language, from Alpha, Beta (A, B), the two first letters in Greek, § 1.
- \**Annexive Relation*, that by which one word is annexed to another, so as to take the same construction. § 146.
- Anomala*, Irregular Words, Gr. ἀνώμαλα (ἀ, *not*; ὄμαλος, *even*). §§ 25, 78.
- Apodosis* (ἀποδιδόναι, *to render back*), a Principal Sentence limited by a Clause called Protasis (προτείνειν, *to stretch before*). N. S. XI. B.
- Appositum* (apponere, *to place beside*), an Apposite, or Substantive placed beside another in Qualitative relation. §§ 87, 90. See *Attributum*.
- Asyndeton* (ἀ, *not*, συνδέειν, *to bind together*), the annexing of words without a conjunction.
- Attractio* (attrahere, *to draw to*), a Figure of Syntax. § 159 N. S. I. E. 2.
- Attributum* (attribuere, *to assign*), Attribute; an Adjective assigned to qualify a Substantive. §§ 87, 89.
- The Qualitative relation of an Attribute or Apposite to the words they qualify may be (1) Epithetic: as, Croesus dives; Croesus rex. (2) Attributively Ethetic (see *Enthesis*): as, Croesus, regum ditissimus, vincitur; Croesus, rex Lydorum, vincitur. (3) Adverbially Ethetic: as, Croesus non dives interiit; Croesus non rex interiit. (4) Complemental: as, Croesus fuit dives; Croesus fit rex. § 87.

## C.

*Casus* (cadere, to fall), Case. Gr. πτώσις. *A.* By *Case* is meant the form given to a Noun or Pronoun in order to show the relation in which it stands to some other word in the sentence. Case (*casus*, from *cado*)



is, literally, a *falling*. Grammarians represented that form which a Noun takes when it is the Subject of a sentence, by an upright line, as *AB*, and likened the other forms to lines *falling* away from the perpendicular at various angles; as, *AC*, *AD*, *AE*, *AF*, &c. These they called *Cases*; and their series, *the declension*, *declining*, or *sloping*

*down*, of the word. Afterwards, the Nominative or Subject case was called (with evident impropriety) *Casus Rectus*, *the Upright Case*, and the others (except the Vocative) *Casus Obliqui*, *Oblique Cases*; whereas the *Stem* (or *Crude-form*) of the word is more properly the upright line, and the several Cases, including the Nominative and Vocative, are branches deflecting from it. So, from the Stem *nuc-* (*walnut-tree*) the Cases are: N.V. *nuc-s* (= *nux*), Acc. *nuc-em*, G. *nuc-is*, D. *nuc-i*, Ab. *nuc-e*.

*B.* The Relations which Cases fail to express are supplied by Prepositions; and in the languages of modern Europe the use of Prepositions prevails, and Declension is comparatively rare. Thus the languages derived from Latin (Italian, French, Spanish, and Portuguese) have only one Case-form in each Number for Nouns; English, two; German, four; but the Possessive Case in English is of limited use, and German Declension is freely developed only in the Articles. Of the ancient Aryan tongues, Sanskrit had the six Latin Cases and two more, the Instrumental and the Locative. Greek had only five cases in use, discarding the Ablative, the functions of which it divides between the Genitive and the Dative; but it retains traces of the Instrumental and the Locative. Latin retains many fragments of the Locative Case, as shown here and there in this Grammar; while the Pronominal forms, *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *ubi*, *ibi*, together with the Cases in *-bus*, appear to spring out of the primitive Instrumental Case, though in meaning they have lost all connection with it.

*C.* The primary force of the Cases is a much debated and still undecided question. Modern Grammarians have been inclined generally to explain it by relations of place and extent; and there is much speciousness in the theory which, taking the Nominative as the moving agent, regards the Ablative as the point which motion leaves, the Accusative as that to which it extends, and the Dative as the point of rest. But this theory fails to account for the Sanskrit and Latin Genitive; and against it may be urged that it assigns to the Ablative a place which in Greek is taken by the Genitive, and also that the Latin Ablative includes uses hardly consistent with that which is here stated to be its distinctive use. In this book classical usage has been followed, but without prejudice (it is hoped) to the future study of philosophical grammar.

*Causalis Clausula*, a Causal Clause; an Adverbial Clause introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quum*, &c. § 152. N. S. xi.

- Character* (χαρακτήρ, an impressed mark), usually means the last letter of the Stem of an inflected word. § 11.
- Circumstantive Relation*, the relation in which a Word or Phrase stands to the Verb when it modifies it adverbially. Such is that of Adverbs, Prepositions with their Cases, the Ablative Case always, the Accusative Case often.
- Clausula* (claudere, to inclose), a Clause. This term is used to express any Subordinate Sentence. Co-ordinate Sentences are also called Clauses, but are not discussed in elementary Grammar. See *Enthesis*.
- Collectiva* (colligere, to gather together), Collective Nouns or Nouns of Multitude. N. S. I. E. 3.
- Comparativa Clausula*, a Comparative Clause: an Adverbial Clause introduced by quasi, tanquam, ut si, &c. § 152. N. S. XI.
- \* *Complementum* (complere, to complete), the Complement, that which completes the construction of a Simple Sentence, when its Verb is Copulative. §§ 87, 93. N. S. II. See *Predicate*.
- \* *Compositum Subjectum*, a Composite Subject. § 92. N. S. I. F.
- Concessiva Clausula* (concedere, to grant), a Concessive Clause, an Adverbial Clause introduced by etsi, quamvis, &c. § 152. N. S. XI. A.
- Conditionalis Clausula* (conditio, a condition), the Protasis of a Conditional Sentence. § 152. N. S. XI. B.
- Congruentia* (congruere, to agree), Agreement. §§ 88–92.
- Conjugatio* (conjugare, to yoke together), the Flexion of Verbs. §§ 11, 48.
- Conjunctio* (conjungere, to unite), Conjunction. Gr. σύνδεσμος. §§ 85, 152.
- Conjunctivus Modus*, Conjunctive Mood; the Mood of contingent statement, used purely or subjunctively. §§ 42, 65, 148. N. S. IX.
- Consecutio Temporum* (consequi, to ensue), Consecution of Tenses. § 155. N. S. XIII.
- Consecutiva Clausula*, a Consecutive Clause; an Adverbial Clause denoting consequence, introduced by ut, so that. § 152. N. S. XI. A.
- Consonantes Litterae* (consonare, to sound with), Consonants. § 3.

SCHEME OF THE CONSONANTS.

	MUTES		LIQUIDS			SPIRANTS				DOUBLE
	Hard	Soft	Raque	Smooth	Nasal	Sibilant	Pure	Mixed	Semivowel	
GUTTURAL, or Throat sounds } }	c (k, q)	g	..	..	..	..	h	..	..	x
DENTAL, or Teeth sounds } }	t	d	r	l	n	s	..	..	j	z
LABIAL, or Lip sounds } }	p	b	..	..	m	..	..	f	v	

*Contractio* (contrahere, to draw together), the fusion of two vowels into one long one; as, fidei, fide.

*Copulativa Verba* (copulare, to couple), Copulative Verbs. § 87. N. S. II.

Besides Sum, they comprise the Verbs—

forem, *might be*  
 fio, *become*  
 appareo, *appear*  
 existo, *stand forth*  
 evado, *turn out*

audio, *am called*  
 maneo, *remain*  
 nascor, *am born*  
 videor, *seem*

with some others: also, many Passives of a class of Verbs called Facitive (facere), because they contain the idea of *making*, by deed, thought, or word; such Passives are—

efficior, *am made*  
 creor, *am created*  
 designor, *am marked out*  
 legor, *am chosen*  
 eligor, *am elected*  
 declaror, *am declared*  
 renuncior, *am proclaimed*  
 nominor, nuncupor, *am named*  
 salutor, *am saluted*  
 appellor, vocor, *am called*  
 inscribor, *am entitled*  
 aestimor, *am esteemed*  
 numeror, *am reckoned*

credor, *am believed*  
 existimor, putor, *am thought*  
 ducor, *am deemed*  
 habeor, *am held*  
 censeor, *am counted*  
 agnoscor, *am acknowledged*  
 dicor, *am said*  
 narror, *am related*  
 feror, perhibeor, trador, *am reported*  
 invenior, reperior, *am found*  
 deprehendor, *am discovered*  
 arguor, probor, *am proved.*

*Correlativa*, Pronouns and Particles which mutually correspond in their several classes. § 38. N. E. III.

## D.

*Dativus Casus* (dare, to give; Gr. δοτική πτώσις), the Dative (Receptive) Case. §§ 104–109. N. S. IV.

*Declinatio* (declinare, to slope down), the Flexion of Nouns. § 12. See Case.

*Defectiva* (deficere, to fail), Words wanting some forms. §§ 25, 74.

*Deminutiva* (deminuere, to lessen). N. E. I. D. 2.

*Deponens Verbum*, a Deponent Verb, so called because it lays aside (deponit) Active form, having Active sense. § 40.

## E.

*Ellipsis* (ἄλλειπειν, to leave out), a Figure of Syntax. § 158. N. S. I. E. 1.

*Enclitica*, (ἐγκλίνειν, to lean on), words which throw back their accent on the word before them: as, -quē, -vě, -ně.

\**Enthesis* (ἐντιθέναι, to place in), a group of words, sometimes one word, forming an abbreviated Adjectival or Adverbial Clause. An Ablative Absolute is usually an Adverbial Enthesis of Time, Cause, or Condition.

*Enuntiatio* (enunciare, to state), a proposition or statement; the first and principal of the three forms of a Simple Sentence. N. S. X. A.

*Enuntiatio Obliqua*, Oblique Enunciation (indirect statement), the first and principal of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. Its chief form is the Infinitive Clause (Accusative-and-Infinitive). § 94. N. S. X. A. (1).

*Epithet* (Gr. ἐπίθετον), an Adjective simply qualifying a Noun: vir bonus, a good man. § 87. See *Attributum*.

## F.

*Factitiva Verba* (facere, to make), Factitive or Quid-qualē Verbs. § 99. N. S. III. D.

*Figura*, *Figure* (fingere, to fashion), a term used in Grammar for a 'Fashion' which departs from ordinary use. Figures are either of Etymology (as Contraction), of Syntax (as Ellipsis), of Prosody (as Synaloepha), or of Rhetoric (as Metaphora).

*Finalis Clausula* (finis, end), Final Clause; an Adverbial Clause, expressing purpose: introduced by ut, in order that; ne, lest, &c. § 152. N. S. XI. A., XIV. A. d.

*Finitum Verbum*, Finite Verb; a term comprising the three moods of a Verb, which have limits (fines), especially of Person, from which the other forms (hence called Verbum Infinitum) are free. § 42.

*Flexio* (flectere, to bend), Flexion; also called Inflection. § 11.

## G.

*Genetivus* (γενική πτῶσις), the Genitive (Proprietary) Case. § 126-136. N. S. VI.

*Genus* (kind), Gender; the distinction of Nouns, as Masculine (m.), Feminine (f.), or Neuter (n.), that is, neither of the two former.

*Gerundium*: *Gerundivum* (gerere, to perform). The Gerundive is the Latin Participle in dus, and the Gerund is probably its Neuter Singular, declined as a Substantive, and attached to the Infinitive Verb-noun. The Gerundive seems to have been originally a Present Participle (oriundus, volvenda dies, etc.), but whether Active or Passive is disputed. § 140. N. S. VII.

*Graecismus*, Graecism; the imitation of a Greek idiom in Latin.

## H.

*Historic Infinitive*, the Infinitive used in direct predication for a Finite Verb. § 140, 2. N. S. VII. A.

## I.

*Imperativus Modus* (imperare, to command), the Imperative Mood in Verbs, which commands or entreats. § 42.

*Impersonalia Verba* (in, not, persona, person), Impersonal Verbs, which cannot take a Personal Pronoun as Subject. §§ 75, 175. N. S. XIV. F.

*Indicativus Modus* (indicare, to show), the declarative or absolute Mood of Verbs. § 42.

*Infinitiva Clausula*, the Infinitive Clause: the Substantival Clause called Accusative and Infinitive. See *Enunciatio Obliqua*.

*Infinitivum* (Nomen), the Verb-noun Infinitive. §§ 45, 140. N. S. VII.

*Infinitum Verbum*. §§ 45, 140. N. S. VII. See *Finitum Verbum*.

*Interjectio* (interjicere, to throw between). §§ 86, 137.

*Interrogatio Infinitiva*, the Infinitive Clause used as an indignant question. N. S. x. D.

*Interrogatio Obliqua*, Oblique Interrogation. As Direct Interrogation is one of the three forms which a Simple Sentence may assume, so Oblique or Indirect Interrogation is one of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. § 149. N. S. x. A. (3).

*Intransitiva Verba*, Intransitive Verbs; Verbs which do not regularly take an Accusative of the Object. N. S. III. D. See *Transitiva*.

## K

*Kalendarium*, the Calendar or plan of the days of the Roman month; so called from *Kalendae*, *the Calends*, or first day in it. N. E. IV. C.

## L.

*Locativus* (*locus, place*), Locative Case; a case existing in Sanskrit, of which fragments remain in Greek and Latin. § 121. N. S. v. G. 2.

## M.

*Mobilia Substantiva* (*mobilis, moveable*). Substantives which have a Feminine corresponding to a Masculine form. N. E. I. D. 1.

*Modus* (*manner*), Mood; that Accident of a Verb which shows the manner in which its action or state is conceived of. § 42.

## N.

*Negativae Particulae* (*negare, to deny*), Negatives. § 82. N. S. XIV. A.

*Nomina* (Gr. *ὄνομα, a name*), Nouns comprise Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns; but the term is often used when Substantives alone are meant. § 9.

*Nominativus Casus* (*nominare, to name*. Gr. *ὀνομαστικὴ πτῶσις*). §§ 87, 88, 93. See *Case*.

\**Noun-term*, a Substantive, or what may stand for a Substantive; as Adjective, Pronoun, Verb-noun or Substantival Clause. § 87. N. S. I. C.

*Numeralia*, words representing Number. N. E. IV. A.

*Nummaria Res*, Roman money. N. E. IV. D.

## O.

*Objeotive Relation*, that of the Accusative of the Nearer Object to a Transitive Verb. N. S. III.

*Objectum* (*obicere, to cast in the way*), Object; that which is affected by action: if directly affected it is called Nearer Object (Accusative); if indirectly, Remoter Object (Dative). N. S. III. IV.

*Obliqua Oratio* (Oblique Discourse), any statement, command, or question expressed in indirect construction. This term includes the three Substantival Clauses: Oblique Enunciation, Petition, and Interrogation, though sometimes used with special reference to the construction of Accusative-and-Infinitive (Infinitive Clause), which is the chief form of Oblique Enunciation or Narration. N. S. x. A. B.

*Oblique Subject*, the Accusative Subject of an Infinitive. § 94.

*Oblique Complement*, the Accusative Complement of an Oblique Copulative Clause. § 94. N. S. II. A., III. D.

## P.

*Participium* (partem capere, *to take a share*), an Adjectival Verb-form which shares the functions of Adjective and Verb. §§ 45, 142. N. S. XIV. D.

*Partes Orationis*, Parts of Speech, or Words. § 9.

*Particulæ*, Particles, or small Parts of Speech; a name given to the four undeclined Parts, and also including some which are only used in compound words; as, ambi-, re-, se-, in-, dis-. § 82, &c.

*Partitiva Vocabula* (partiri, *to divide*). N. S. VI. B.

*Passiva Vox* (pati, *to suffer*), the Passive Voice, or form used in Verbs to show that something is acted upon, and so 'suffers.' This Voice is proper to Transitive Verbs only; but many Intransitive Verbs use it in Impersonal construction. § 76. A Passive Verb is often Reflexive; as, vector, *I turn myself*. For *Passive Construction* see N. S. XIV. E.

*Patronymicum* (πατήρ, *father*; ὄνομα, *name*), Patronymic, a title expressing descent from a father or ancestor.

*Perfectum* (perficere, *to complete*) *Tempus*, the Perfect Tense, which in Latin has a double use. § 48. N. S. XIII.

*Perfect-stem*. §§ 46, 48.

*Periphrastic Conjugation* (περιφράζειν, *to speak circuitously*). § 64.

*Petitiu Obliqua*. As *Petition* (command or entreaty) is the second of the three forms of Simple Sentences, so *Oblique Petition* is the second of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. N. S. X. A. (2).

*Phrasis* (φράσις), a *Phrase*; a combination of words, or a single word idiomatically used, containing a notion, but not forming a Clause or an *Enthesis*; as, multæ artis, ruri, *Preposition with Case*, etc.

*Position* (situs), a term in *Prosody* to express that a vowel is short, long, or doubtful, by standing before other letters. § 162.

*Predicate* (praedicare, *to declare*), that member of a Sentence, by which something is declared of the Subject. Writers on Logic resolve every proposition into Subject, Copula, and Predicate. But in Grammar this would only mislead, for it is not in such form that authors write. Neither sum, nor any other Copulative Verb, exactly corresponds to the logical Copula; nor is the word, which any such Verb links to the Subject, in every instance identical with a logical Predicate. For these reasons (while Madvig and most other Grammarians are followed in allowing the term *Predicate* in Grammar to a Finite Verb) the term *Complement* is used to express the word or phrase linked by a Copulative Verb to the Subject, and so *completing* a Simple Sentence.

*Praepositio* (praepone, *to place before*), Gr. πρόθεσις. §§ 9, 83, 103, 122. N. S. XIV. C.

*Predicative Relation*, the Relation existing between Subject and Verb of the Simple Sentence.

*Present-Stem*. §§ 11, 46. The Present-Stem of many Verbs differs from the True Stem. The chief variations are these:

1. *N* is inserted before the Consonant-character: as, fi-*n*-do, fra-*n*-go, &c. Before a labial this *n* becomes *m*: as, la-*m*-bo, ru-*m*-po.
2. *N* is suffixed (*a*) to a Vowel-character: as, si-*n*-o, li-*n*-o; (*b*) to a Liquid-character: as, tem-*n*-o, cer-*n*-o, sper-*n*-o, ster-*n*-o. So po-*n*-o for pos-*n*-o.
3. *Sc* is suffixed (*a*) to a Vowel-character: as, pa-*sc*-o, ira-*sc*-or, cre-*sc*-o, &c.; (*b*) to a Consonant-character with *i*: as, ulc-*isc*-or. So di-*sc*-o for dic-*sc*-o; na-*n*-c-*isc*-or for nac-or.
4. *L* is doubled: as, pel-*l*-o, tol-*l*-o.
5. *T* is suffixed to Guttural-character: as, flec-*t*-o, pec-*t*-o, nec-*t*-o.
6. A Guttural is cast out: as, stru-o for stru-*c*-o, vivo for vi-*g*-uo.
7. The Stem is re-duplicated: as, gi-*g*-no for gen-o, si-*st*o for sto.

\**Proulative Relation* (proferre, to extend), that in which Predication is extended by an Infinitive (therefore called *Proulative*), joined to Verbs, Participles, and, poetically, Adjectives. § 140. N. S. vii. *B*. Attentive consideration shows that this use of the Infinitive is really distinct from its Objective use, constituting a special relation in grammar, and requiring a distinctive appellation.

*Pronomen* (Gr. ἀντωνυμία), an inflected Part of Speech, ranking among Nouns, and so called because it is a substitute for a name. § 38.

*Propria Nomina*, Proper Names; Nouns peculiar to Person or Place.

*Proprietary Relation*, that of the Genitive to the word proper to it. § 126.

*Prosodia* (προσῳδία, to sing in accord), Prosody; that division of Grammar which treats of Quantity of Syllables and of Rhythm. The Laws of Metre are usually comprised in it. § 161. Notes.

*Protasis*. See *Apodosis*.

## Q.

*Qualitative Relation*. See *Attributum*.

## R.

*Receptive Relation* (recipere, to receive), that of the Dative, as Case of the Recipient, to the governing word. § 104–109. N. S. iv.

*Recta Oratio*, Direct Discourse, in a Principal Sentence, as distinguished from *Oratio Obliqua*. N. S. x.

*Reduplicatio* (reduplicare, to redouble), Reduplication; a peculiar mutation of form, by which the sense of words is varied, in Greek, Latin, and other languages. In Latin, its chief use is in forming the Perfect-stem of Verbs. See §§ 48, 81 II. (5), III. 9.

*Reflexiva Pronomina* (reflectere, to bend back), Reflexive Pronouns: se, with its Possessive suus; so called, because they 'bend back' their relation to the principal noun preceding; generally (but not always) the Subject of the Principal Sentence. § 145. N. S. viii.

*Relation*. The Relations of Construction existing between the words of a Simple Sentence are eight in number: (1) Predicative; (2) Qualitative; (3) Objective; (4) Receptive; (5) Circumstantive; (6) Proprietary; (7) Proulative; (8) Annexive. See these Words.

*Relativum Pronomen* (referre, to refer), the Relative Pronoun qui, so called because referred to an Antecedent Noun-term. See § 91.



N. S. 1. From this root are derived the Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns, and the Particles connected with them.

*Root*, the common part of kindred words. § 11.

## S.

*Scansio* (scandere, *to climb*), the measurement of feet in a verse.

*Sententia* (sentire, *to express thought*), a Sentence. § 87. Sentences are Simple or Compound. A Simple Sentence is either a statement (enuntiatio), a command or request (petitio), or a question (interrogatio). A Compound Sentence consists of two or more Simple Sentences, one being the Principal, the rest either Co-ordinate (not dependent) or Subordinate (dependent in construction); which two kinds are called Clauses. N. S. x. A.

*Stem*, the crude form of a Word without the Endings: as, mensa-, mone-. A Vowel-stem stripped of its vowel is called a Clipt Stem: as, mon- for mon-e-.

*Subjectum* (subjicere, *to place under*), Subject. §§ 87, 88, 93, 94. N. S. i. ii.

\**Subobliqua Clausula*, a Suboblique Clause, subordinate to Oratio Obliqua. If Oratio Obliqua is contained in the sense only, not in form, the Subordinate Clause is said to be 'Subobliquae potestatis,' of Suboblique power, or 'virtually Suoblique.' N. S. x. B.

*Substantival Clauses*, the three forms of a Simple Sentence (statement, command, question) in Oblique Construction. See *Oratio Obliqua*.

*Substantivum* (substare, *to stand beneath*), a Substantive, the first of the inflected Parts of Speech. §§ 9 I. (1), 12, 16, etc.

*Superlativus Gradus* (superferre, *to carry above*), the highest Degree of a Compared Adjective or Adverb. §§ 35-37.

*Supine-Stem*. § 47.

*Supinum*, Supine, an unmeaning term, applied to the two Cases of the Verb-noun which end in *um* and *u* severally. §§ 45, 141 (5) (6).

*Syllaba* (συλλαβάνειν, *to take together*), a Syllable; that is, one or more letters pronounced in a breath. § 5.

*Syncope* (συγκόπτειν, *to cut short*), the shortening of a word by casting out an inner vowel: as, patri for pateri.

*Synesis* (σύνεσις, *meaning*), a Figure of Syntax. § 160. N. S. i. E. 3.

*Syntaxis* (συντάσσειν, *to arrange together*), that division of Grammar which treats of the construction of sentences.

## T.

*Temporalis Clausula*, a Temporal Clause: an Adverbial Clause introduced by a Conjunction of Time. § 152. N. S. xi.

*Tempus* (time), Tense; that which marks the time of action in Verbs. §§ 43, 48.

\**Trajectiva* (trajicere, *to throw over*); Verbs and Adjectives, which by their meaning suggest a Recipient. Pure Trajective Verbs have a Dative alone (Cui-Verbs): Trajective Verbs Transitive (Cui-quid Verbs) have Accusative and Dative. § 104. N. S. iv.

*Transitiva Verba* (transire, *to pass over*), Verbs which pass over to an Accusative of the nearer Object. § 96 N. S. iii.

## V.

*Verb of Being* (sum, esse). Gr. ῥῆμα ὑπαρκτικόν. This has been translated by Latin Grammarians, 'Verbum Substantivum'; a term not true to the Greek, and confusing to learners. Sum is the Verb of Being, essential to the expression of thought. Hence we find its root widely spread throughout the languages of the world. §§ 49, 87. N. S. II.

*Verbum* (Gr. ῥῆμα, *the word*), Verb; an inflected Part of Speech, so called, as *the Word* which effects discourse. §§ 9, 39, etc.

\**Verb-Noun*. All the parts of the Verb Infinite are Verb-Nouns Substantival or Adjectival, uniting functions of the Verb with functions of the Noun. §§ 45, 140, etc. N. S. I. C.

*Vocales* (vox, *voice*), Vowels. § 2. Their relations are shown in the following scheme, in which the sign † represents the vowel wavering between *i* and *u* (optĭmus, optŭmus), which the Emperor Claudius brought for a time into public use:

	Standard vowel		
		a	
Sharp medial	e		o Flat medial
Sharp semiconsonant	i	†	u Flat semiconsonant
		Medial	

*J* and *u* did not exist anciently. *J* represents the consonant power of *i* (i-consonans); *u* the vowel-power of *v* (v-vocalis).

*Vocativus Casus* (vocare, *to call*), the Case of one addressed, which stands out of the Sentence. §§ 14, 87, 137.

*Vowel-change*, the weakening or strengthening of Vowels, which occurs in Flexion, Derivation and Composition. §§ 81, 84. N. E. II.

*Vox*, Voice; that form, by which Verbs are shown as *doing* or *suffering*. § 39. N. S. XIV. E.

*Note*.—How the Romans spoke Latin can never be known with precision. Some sounds are lost: as those of f, ch, th, ph, rh, ei, eu. Others are matter of conjecture: as that æ=ai in French Mai, œ=oy in boy, au=ow in cow; y-vowel=Greek υ. It is probable that c=k always, never being soft as in *cell*, *city*; that g also was hard always, as in *get*, *gird*, never soft, as in *gentle*, *origin*; that v=Engl. w nearly, and i-consonans (j)=English y-consonant.

As to vowels, in the Grammar the following line is given to express the long and short sounds of each: the first four words being sounded as in French, the last as in Italian:

Quīnīne, dēmēsne, pāpā, prōpōse, Zūlū.

If four sounds are allowed to each vowel, and shown as 1. Italic: 2. with short mark ◡: 3. Roman: 4. with long mark –; we may take the following words as containing them: a, ād-a-mānd-ās; e, rē-vell-e-rēs; i, in-scrib-i-tīs; o, de nōv-ō corp-o-re; u, fulg-u-ra mū-tū-a.

The learner must take care never to sound a as in bāse (which is the long e-sound); never to sound e as in thēse (which is the long i-sound); nor i as in īce; nor u as in ūse; these being diphthong sounds. See 'Public School Latin Grammar,' Append. B.

# CLASSICAL SCHOOL-BOOKS

In Accordance with the Public School Latin Primer

---

The PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR, to follow in use the Public School Latin Primer; and edited, with the same sanction, by the Editor of the Public School Latin Primer. 12mo. price 6s.

'The *Public School Latin Primer*, intelligently taught, has proved a valuable instrument in education; and what it has done for the foundation the *Public School Latin Grammar* will certainly do for the superstructure. We have no book like it; it is far more comprehensive than any of

our ordinary school grammars, while it is yet neither so discursive nor so lengthy as those larger grammars which, while they were most valuable to the advanced scholar, were to all below him almost useless.'

EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

The PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER. Edited with the sanction of the Head Masters of the Nine Public Schools included in the Royal Commission. Price 2s. 6d.

'The Public School Latin Primer we have reasons for believing to be the best Latin grammar ever produced in this country. . . . We have now a School Latin Grammar eminently fitted to strengthen alike the young mind as well as the memory, by its appeal to the *reflective*

powers; and such an influence cannot fail to invest the dry subject of grammar with an interest most beneficial to the student's progress. The Primer has succeeded in its aim in the opinion of all unprejudiced judges.'

LONDON REVIEW.

*SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA*, PART I. a First COMPANION EXERCISE BOOK adapted to the Public School Latin Primer. By the EDITOR of the Primer. Price 2s. 6d.

*SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA*, PART II. a Second COMPANION EXERCISE BOOK to the Public School Latin Primer. By the EDITOR of the Primer. Price 3s. 6d.

KEY to the EXERCISES in *SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA*, PARTS I. and II. price 5s. supplied to INSTRUCTORS only, on application to the Publishers.

The Rev. Canon KENNEDY'S CHILD'S LATIN PRIMER, or First Latin Lessons. A New Edition, adapted to the Public School Latin Primer. Price 2s.

The CHILD'S LATIN ACCIDENCE, extracted from Dr. KENNEDY'S Child's Latin Primer, and containing all that is necessary to lead Boys up to the Public School Latin Primer. Price 1s.

The Rev. Dr. WHITE'S FIRST LATIN PARSING BOOK, adapted to the SYNTAX of the Public School Latin Primer. Price 2s.

The Rev. Dr. WHITE'S FIRST LATIN EXERCISE BOOK, adapted to the Public School Latin Primer. Price 2s. 6d.—KEY, 2s. 6d.

The Rev. Dr. WHITE'S PROGRESSIVE LATIN READER, with a Vocabulary, and Notes adapted to the Public School Latin Primer. Price 3s. 6d.

VALPY'S LATIN DELECTUS, newly edited by the Rev. Dr. WHITE, with Grammatical Notes adapted to the Public School Latin Primer. Price 2s. 6d.—KEY, 3s. 6d.

---

London: LONGMANS and CO, Paternoster Row.

# CLASSICAL SCHOOL-BOOKS

In Accordance with the Public School Latin Primer.

The Rev. Dr. WHITE'S JUNIOR STUDENT'S COMPLETE  
LATIN-ENGLISH and ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY [in which the  
formation of words, which forms one prominent feature of the Public School  
Latin Primer, is exhibited to the eye at a glance]. Revised Edition. Square  
12mo. pp. 1,058, price 12s. cloth.

A SHO  
EDMUND

Mr. HEN  
PROSE  
Price 2s.

Mr. HEN  
LATIN  
Primer.

Mr. HEN  
EXERCI  
Price 4s.

The Rev  
CISES ;  
Livy, to  
to the Pu  
price 5s.

The Rev  
PROSE ;  
to the W  
English s

BRADLE  
Dr. WHIT  
Primer.

BRADLE  
the Rev.  
Primer.

BRADLE  
Rev. Dr.  
Primer.

BRADLE  
with Engl  
Price 2s. 6

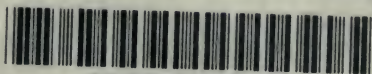
A NEW  
as a Comp  
M.A. PA  
GRAMMAR

The GREEK DELECTUS of the LATE Rev. R. VALPY,  
D.D. Re-edited by the Rev. Dr. WHITE, with Notes adapted to Parry's Greek  
Grammar, and with a new Lexicon. Price 2s. 6d.—KEY, 2s. 6d.

London: LONGMANS and CO. Paternoster Row.

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY  
BERKELEY

U.C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C022668925

926525

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

